

REFINITIV

## DELTA REPORT

### 10-K

HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGI

10-K - DECEMBER 31, 2023 COMPARED TO 10-K - DECEMBER 31, 2022

The following comparison report has been automatically generated

TOTAL DELTAS 2607

■ CHANGES	162
■ DELETIONS	814
■ ADDITIONS	1631

[Table of Contents](#)

---

UNITED STATES

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

Annual report pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

For the Fiscal Year Ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**

or

Transition report pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission File No. 001-38445



Graphic

HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware

36-4787690

(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

(I.R.S. Employer

642 Newtown Yardley Road, Suite 100  
Newtown, Pennsylvania  
(Address of principal executive offices)

Identification No.)

18940

(Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (215) 944-6100

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class

Trading Symbol

Name of each exchange on which registered

Class A Common Stock, \$0.001 par value per share

HSDT

The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days: Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (\$232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed a report on and attestation to its management's assessment of the effectiveness of its internal control over financial reporting under Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (15 U.S.C. 7262(b)) by the registered public accounting firm that prepared or issued its audit report. Yes

If securities are registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act, indicate by check mark whether the financial statements of the registrant included in the filing reflect the correction of an error to previously issued financial statements.

Indicate by check mark whether any of those error corrections are restatements that required a recovery analysis of incentive-based compensation received by any of the registrant's executive officers during the relevant recovery period pursuant to § 240.10D-1(b).

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). Yes  No

The aggregate market value of the common equity held by non-affiliates of the registrant on June 30, 2022 June 30, 2023, based on the closing price on that date of \$1.18 \$9.58 per share, was approximately \$4,729,003, \$5,259,746. As of March 6, 2023 March 21, 2024, there were 28,211,362 887,295 shares of the registrant's Class A common stock outstanding.

### Documents Incorporated by Reference

Portions of the registrant's Definitive Proxy Statement to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Regulation 14A in connection with the registrant's 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, to be filed subsequent to the date hereof, are incorporated by reference into Part III of this report. Such Definitive Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission not later than 120 days after the conclusion of the registrant's fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

### [Table of Contents](#)

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS

Item	Description	Page
	<b>PART I</b>	6
<a href="#">ITEM 1.</a>	<a href="#">BUSINESS</a>	6
<a href="#">ITEM 1A.</a>	<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	3033
<a href="#">ITEM 1B.</a>	<a href="#">UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS</a>	5152
<a href="#">ITEM 1C.</a>	<a href="#">CYBERSECURITY</a>	52
<a href="#">ITEM 2.</a>	<a href="#">PROPERTIES</a>	5153
<a href="#">ITEM 3.</a>	<a href="#">LEGAL PROCEEDINGS</a>	5153
<a href="#">ITEM 4.</a>	<a href="#">MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES</a>	5153
	<b>PART II</b>	5254
<a href="#">ITEM 5.</a>	<a href="#">MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES</a>	5254
<a href="#">ITEM 6.</a>	<a href="#">[RESERVED]</a>	5254
<a href="#">ITEM 7.</a>	<a href="#">MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS</a>	5355
<a href="#">ITEM 7A.</a>	<a href="#">QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK</a>	6163
<a href="#">ITEM 8.</a>	<a href="#">FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA</a>	6163

<u>ITEM 9.</u>	<u>CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE</u>	6263
<u>ITEM 9A.</u>	<u>CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES</u>	6264
<u>ITEM 9B.</u>	<u>OTHER INFORMATION</u>	6264
<u>ITEM 9C.</u>	<u>DISCLOSURE REGARDING FOREIGN JURISDICTIONS THAT PREVENT INSPECTIONS</u>	6264
<u>PART III</u>		6365
<u>ITEM 10.</u>	<u>DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE</u>	6365
<u>ITEM 11.</u>	<u>EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION</u>	6371
<u>ITEM 12.</u>	<u>SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS</u>	6380
<u>ITEM 13.</u>	<u>CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE</u>	6383
<u>ITEM 14.</u>	<u>PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES</u>	6384
<u>PART IV</u>		6486
<u>ITEM 15.</u>	<u>EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES</u>	6486
<u>ITEM 16.</u>	<u>FORM 10-K SUMMARY</u>	6688
<u>SIGNATURES</u>		84

[Table of Contents](#)

In this Annual Report on Form 10-K, ("Form 10-K") unless otherwise specified, references to "we," "us," "our," "Helius" or "the Company" mean Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries, Helius Medical, Inc, ("HMI"), Helius Medical Technologies (Canada), Inc., ("HMC"), Helius NeuroRehab, Inc., and Helius Canada Acquisition Ltd., unless the context otherwise requires. Our financial statements are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("U.S. GAAP").

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This Annual Report on Form 10-K includes certain statements that may constitute "forward-looking statements." All statements contained in this Form 10-K, other than statements of historical facts, that address events or developments that the Company expects to occur, are forward-looking statements. These statements are based on management's expectations at the time the statements are made and are subject to risks, uncertainty, and changes in circumstances, which may cause actual results, performance, financial condition or achievements to differ materially from anticipated results, performance, financial condition or achievements. All statements contained herein that are not clearly historical in nature are forward-looking and the words "anticipate," "believe," "calls for," "could" "depends," "estimate," "expect," "extrapolate," "foresee," "goal," "intend," "likely," "might," "plan," "project," "propose," "potential," "target," "think," and similar expressions, or that events or conditions "may," "should occur" "will," "would," or any similar expressions are generally intended to identify forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements in this Form 10-K include but are not limited to statements relating to: the Company's future growth and operational progress, including manufacturing activities for the PoNS device, receipt of prescriptions and progress of commercialization of the PoNS device in the U.S., the COVID-19 pandemic including its impact on the Company, our ability to receive reimbursement coverage under Medicare, Medicaid or under other insurance plans, clinical development plans, product development activities, plans for U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, filings and their subsequent approvals, other foreign or domestic regulatory filings, the safety and effectiveness of our product, our market awareness, our ability to compete effectively, the ability and limitation of our manufacturing source(s), sources, our distribution network, the adequacy of our intellectual property protection, our future patent approvals, our future expenses and cash flow, our

ability to become profitable, our future financing arrangements, our accountants' future perspective including any going concerns, any future stock price, and our ability to build commercial infrastructure, and our ability to receive reimbursement coverage under Medicare, Medicaid or under other insurance plans. infrastructure.

Such forward-looking statements are necessarily based upon a number of estimates and assumptions that, while considered reasonable by Helius, are inherently subject to significant business, economic, competitive political and social uncertainties and contingencies. The factors and assumptions used by management of the Company to develop such forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, uncertainties associated with the Company's capital requirements to achieve its business objectives, availability of funds, the ability to find additional sources of funding, the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, manufacturing, labor shortage and supply chain risks, including risks related to manufacturing delays, build a commercial team and build relationships with Key Opinion Leaders, neurology experts and neurorehabilitation centers the Company's ability to train physical therapists in the supervision of the use of the PoNS treatment, the Company's ability to secure contracts with rehabilitation clinics, the Company's ability to obtain national Medicare insurance coverage and to obtain a reimbursement code, so that the PoNS device is covered by Medicare and Medicaid, the Company's ability to continue to build internal commercial infrastructure, secure state distribution licenses, market awareness of the PoNS device, future clinical trials and the clinical development process, the product development process and FDA regulatory submission review and approval process, other development activities, ongoing government regulation and other factors included in the section entitled "Risk Factors."

Although we believe the expectations expressed in such forward-looking statements are based on reasonable assumptions at the time they were made, they are subject to risks and uncertainties, known and unknown, which could cause actual results and developments to differ materially from those expressed or implied in such statements. Forward-looking statements are not guarantees of future performance and actual results may differ significantly from such forward-looking statements.

You should refer to the "Risk Factors" section of this Form 10-K for a discussion of important factors that may cause our actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied by our forward-looking statements. As a result of these factors, we cannot assure you that the forward-looking statements in this Form 10-K will prove to be accurate.

2

---

[Table of Contents](#)

Furthermore, if our forward-looking statements prove to be inaccurate, the inaccuracy may be material. In light of the significant uncertainties in these forward-looking statements, you should not regard these statements as a representation or warranty by us or any other person that we will achieve our objectives and plans in any specified time frame, or at all.

2

---

[Table of Contents](#)

These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this Form 10-K. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update or revise these forward-looking statements for any reason, even if new information becomes available in the future. You should, however, review the factors and risks and other information we describe in the reports we will file from time to time with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") after the date of this Form 10-K.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## SUMMARY RISK FACTORS

Our business is subject to a number of risks, as fully described in "Item 1A. Risk Factors" in this Annual Report. The principal factors and uncertainties include, among others:

- We have a history of losses and may not achieve or sustain profitability in the future;
- Global macroeconomic conditions remain volatile and uncertain due in part to geopolitical conflicts, banking and financial markets disruptions, supply chain disruptions, labor shortages, increased inflation and high interest rates, and any adverse impacts of such conditions could significantly harm our business or negatively affect our ability to obtain financing;
- We will require additional financing to carry out our plan of operations, and failure to obtain such financing may cause our business to fail;
- We currently only have one product, the PoNS device, which is authorized for commercial distribution in Canada, Australia, and in the U.S. for treatment of MS, and we have not obtained authorization and/or certification to distribute the PoNS device commercially in Europe or in the U.S. for other indications and may never obtain such authorizations; authorizations and/or certifications;
- We may encounter substantial delays in planned clinical trials, and planned clinical trials may fail to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the PoNS device to the satisfaction of regulatory authorities;
- Generation of revenue related to the PoNS technology is dependent on the PoNS Therapy® being prescribed by physicians in the U.S. and our ability to train physical therapists in the supervision of the use of the PoNS Therapy;
- Market awareness of the PoNS device is limited, and the neuromodulation market is new and uncertain;
- We are dependent on third-party scientists and research institutions, in part, for research and development and on third parties for the manufacture and distribution of our product;
- The COVID-19 pandemic and outbreaks of communicable diseases may continue to materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations;
- Third parties may gain access to our technology if our intellectual property protection is insufficient;
- We may be subject to various litigation claims and legal proceedings, including intellectual property litigation, which may adversely affect our business;
- Commercialization of our product outside of Canada, Australia, and the U.S. for indications other than MS is dependent on obtaining market authorization and/or certification from the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities, which will require significant time, research, development, and clinical study expenditures and ultimately may not be successful;
- Failure to secure contracts with workers' compensation and third-party administrators or rehabilitation clinics could have a negative impact on our sales and would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and operating results;
- Failure to obtain a Healthcare Common Procedure Coding System code and benefit category determination so that the PoNS device may be more easily covered by Medicare could have a negative impact on our intended sales and would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and operating results;
- If we fail to comply with healthcare laws, we could face substantial penalties and financial exposure;
- We face ongoing government scrutiny and regulation in connection with the development of product candidates and following marketing authorization; authorization and/or certification;
- After commercialization, a product recall or the discovery of serious safety issues with our products could have a significant adverse impact on us; and
- We have been the victim of a cyber-related crime. Our controls and our controls security measures may not be successful in avoiding future cyber-related crimes. cybersecurity incidents; and
- We are reliant on third-party, single-sourced contract manufacturing, exposing us to risks that could delay our sales or result in higher costs or lost product revenues. revenues including additional related risks resulting from the transition of our manufacturer.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## INDUSTRY AND MARKET DATA

In this Form 10-K, we reference information, statistics and estimates regarding the medical devices and healthcare industries. We have obtained this information from various third-party sources, including industry and general publications, reports by market research firms and other sources. This information involves a number of assumptions and limitations, and we have not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of this information. Some data and other information are also based on the good faith estimates of management, which are derived from our research, review of internal surveys, general information discussed in the industry, and third-party sources. We believe that these external sources and estimates are reliable but have not independently verified them. The industries in which we operate are subject to a high degree of uncertainty, change, and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in "Item 1A. Risk Factors." These and other factors could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in this Form 10-K and other publications.

### [Table of Contents](#)

## PART I

### ITEM 1. BUSINESS

#### Overview

We are a neurotechnology company focused on neurological wellness. Our purpose is to develop, license or acquire non-implantable technologies targeted at reducing symptoms of neurological disease or trauma.

Our product, known as the Portable Neuromodulation Stimulator, or PoNS®, is an innovative non-implantable medical device, inclusive of a controller and mouthpiece, which delivers mild electrical stimulation to the surface of the tongue to provide treatment of gait deficit and chronic balance deficit. PoNS **Therapy** is integral to the overall PoNS solution and is the physical therapy applied by patients during use of the PoNS device. PoNS has marketing clearance in the U.S. for use in the U.S. as a short-term treatment of gait deficit due to mild-to-moderate symptoms for multiple sclerosis ("MS") and is to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program in patients 22 years of age and over by prescription only. We began accepting prescriptions for PoNS in the U.S. in March 2022, and commercial sales of PoNS commenced in April 2022. PoNS is authorized for sale in Canada for three indications: (i) for use as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of chronic balance deficit due to mild-to-moderate traumatic brain injury, or mTBI, and is to be used in conjunction with physical **therapy**, or **PoNS Therapy**; (ii) for use as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from MS and it is to be used in conjunction with physical therapy; and (iii) for use as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from stroke, to be used in conjunction with physical therapy. It has been commercially available in Canada since March 2019. PoNS is authorized for sale as a Class IIa medical device in Australia and we have been seeking a business partner to commercialize and distribute PoNS in Australia.

#### PoNS Device

The PoNS device is a non-implantable medical device comprised of a controller and a mouthpiece that are connected by a cord. The controller is worn around the neck and the mouthpiece sits on the tongue during treatment. PoNS **Therapy** or the "Therapy", utilizes the PoNS device in conjunction with supervised therapeutic exercise. The PoNS **Therapy** consists of condition specific exercises for movement control, including balance and gait training and breathing and awareness training, which are tailored to focus on the individual patient's functional deficits. The PoNS **Therapy** is completed over a period of 14 weeks. During the first 2 weeks, the PoNS **Therapy** is mostly administered in a rehabilitation or physical therapy clinic by a PoNS trained therapist and, to a lesser extent, performed at home. The remaining 12 weeks are completed at home with weekly clinic visits to monitor rehabilitation progress, assess improvements and ensure the therapy intensity remains appropriate. When the device is on, the 143 gold-plated electrodes on the mouthpiece send mild electrical signals to the tongue. These impulses stimulate sensory nerves in the tongue that have direct pathways to the brain, through the brain stem. The combination of mild stimulation with

supervised therapeutic exercise promotes neuromodulation and likely trigger neuroplastic effects, which potentially lead to functional improvements in balance and gait. During each clinic visit and at the end of the **14 week Therapy**, **14-week therapy**, the clinic downloads and reviews the PoNS usage data from the device. This usage data in combination with the detail of the completed treatment assessments gives the clinician and the patient a unique and powerful method to assess treatment progress. The patient initiates their **PoNS** Therapy sessions with the PoNS device initially under the supervision of the clinicians, then through regular check-ins.

Clinical research has shown that translingual neurostimulation activates two major cranial nerves – the trigeminal nerve, and the facial nerve, which creates a flow of neural impulses that are delivered directly into the brain stem and cerebellum – the main control centers for multiple functions including sensory perception and movement. From the brain stem, these impulses travel throughout the brain and may activate or reactivate signaling pathways involved in human function. Researchers believe that supervised therapeutic exercise with neurostimulation can modulate neural activity and initiate adaptive changes in the brain that lead to restructuring and reorganization (neuroplasticity) processes in specific areas of the brain.

[Table of Contents](#)

*Design*

The PoNS device is ergonomically designed for patient comfort, is relatively light, contains a replaceable hygienic mouthpiece and a rechargeable battery with built-in technology to allow for tracking of the patient's usage, including time and intensity of treatments. See Figure 1.

Graphic

Figure 1

The Portable Neuromodulation Stimulator, PoNS device

The mouthpiece of the PoNS device sits on the front third of the tongue and is held in place by the lips and closed mouth. See Figure 2.

Graphic

Graphic

Figure 2

A rechargeable lithium polymer battery with built-in charge safety circuitry provides power. While the voltage and pulse timing to each electrode are programmed into the device and cannot be altered, the user can adjust the stimulus intensity, which is achieved by adjusting the electrical

pulse width. The sensation produced by the mouthpiece is similar to the feeling of drinking a carbonated beverage. The patented waveform is specifically designed to minimize the potential for tissue irritation.

[Table of Contents](#)

**Overview of MS and Current Available Treatments**

MS is currently classified as an autoimmune disease of the central nervous system. The disease attacks the myelin, the protective covering of the nerve necessary for the transmission of nerve impulses through nerve fibers, causing inflammation and often damaging the myelin. Damage to the myelin is variable, depending on the course of the disease, which influences the type and severity of symptoms. MS is unpredictable and can cause symptoms such as extreme fatigue, lack of coordination, weakness, tingling, impaired sensation, vision problems, bladder problems, cognitive impairment and mood changes. Its effects can be physical and emotional with a substantial financial burden. Currently there is no cure and patients with MS experience a progressive decline in health over time. There are a variety of treatments available for MS, some of which are experimental, including pharmaceutical, dietary, and surgical, which may or may not be covered by government or private health insurance.

Findings from a National MS Society study estimate that nearly 1 million people in the U.S. are living with MS of which approximately 25-30% are on Medicare and 93,000 people in Canada are living with MS. The National MS Society estimates that 2.3 million 2.9 million people live with MS globally. The U.S. and Canada have the highest rates of MS, with 309 337.9 to 362.6 cases per 100,000 in the U.S., and 291 cases per 100,000 in Canada, respectively. Given the nature of this neurodegenerative disease, these individuals and their caretakers are active in exploring treatment options that may resolve or delay the progression of symptoms. There is also a well-established advocacy framework.

Mobility disability and walking impairment are among the most debilitating consequences of MS with approximately 85% of individuals diagnosed with MS reporting gait impairment as a major limitation in their daily lives. Gait is one of the most important bodily functions for MS patients and gait parameters, such as walking speed and stride length, have been shown to be significant predictors of patient's independence in daily activities. A survey of 436 patients found that 45% reported a mobility disability in the first month following diagnosis, with upwards of 90% of patients reporting a mobility disability within 10 years of their diagnosis. Additionally, 50-80% of MS patients suffer from balance and gait dysfunction and over 50% 56% fall at least once within a year. three-month period. It has also been reported that unemployment rates in MS patients range from 24-80% with higher rates associated with decreased ambulation and mobility. The Centers for Disease Control, or CDC, reports that individuals with disabilities, like MS, that result in limited mobility are at greater risk for health problems including injury, mental health and depression, overweight and obesity, pain, pressure sores or ulcers and other issues.

A 2016 economic analysis of MS found the total lifetime costs per person with MS to be \$4.1 million, with average yearly healthcare costs ranging from \$30 thousand to \$100 thousand based on the severity of the disease. disease, and averaging \$65 thousand more in yearly healthcare costs than that of someone without MS. In 2019, the total economic burden attributed to MS in the U.S. was \$85.4 billion and the average annual cost of living with MS was \$88.5 thousand.

Since the exact cause of MS is still unknown, there is no known prevention. Although there is no cure for MS yet, immunotherapy can provide disease-modifying effects, and other pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatments can manage symptoms. MS medications are designed to lessen the frequency of relapses and slow the progression of the disease, but none have been proven to halt progression of the disease. While there are several disease-modifying medications approved by the FDA to treat MS, only one drug approved by FDA and Health Canada, Ampyra® (dalfampridine), which is indicated for the improvement of gait speed in conjunction with physical therapy in patients with MS, offers the closest, albeit limited only to speed, comparison to PoNS Therapy on improvement in gait.

**Overview of mmTBI TBI and Current Available Treatments**

There are an estimated 14.5 million 49.0 million people globally, with over 1.5 million 5.3 million in the U.S. and 350,000 760,000 in Canada, living with balance deficit due to mmTBI, who have sustained a TBI. Every year there are 27.2 million newly diagnosed TBIs globally, of which 2.8 million and 165,000 occur in the U.S. and Canada, there are approximately 420,000 and 20,000 newly diagnosed mmTBIs, respectively, resulting in balance deficit. respectively. This condition often has a significant impact on one's quality of life, negatively affecting independence,

employability, productivity, mental health and participation in the community. Rehabilitation is often required following a mmTBI TBI for resulting motor, cognitive and behavioral impairments. **Approximately 80% of individuals who sustain a TBI report balance impairment.** The current standard of care to address balance issues following a mmTBI TBI is supervised therapeutic exercise. While supervised therapeutic exercise can help to

---

[Table of Contents](#)

promote balance recovery, individuals are often unable to return to their full function and are left living with a balance deficit.

Prior to the development of the PoNS device, there were no cleared treatments that were clinically indicated to treat balance deficit. A few studies have suggested that supervised therapeutic exercise aimed at improving balance and gait

---

[Table of Contents](#)

may be mildly effective for rehabilitation in the mmTBI population. Given the small number of published studies, the small number of patients enrolled in the studies of which we are aware, the varying range of interventional protocols employed in such studies and the lower levels of study design, it is difficult to draw any conclusions regarding the effectiveness and dosing parameters of using supervised therapeutic exercise alone for the treatment of balance deficit following mmTBI. Consequently, we believe that there is a large potential commercial opportunity for the PoNS Therapy in the treatment of balance deficit due to mmTBI. Our goal is to establish the PoNS Therapy as the standard of care for this condition all over the world.

***Overview of Stroke in Canada and Current Available Treatments***

According to the **World Health Organization**, there are more than 101 million people across the globe who have experienced a stroke, and over 12 million new strokes occur each year. In the U.S., approximately 650,000 people survive a new stroke each year and an estimated 7 million Americans live with ongoing complications of stroke. **The Canadian Chronic Disease Surveillance System of Canada, Stroke** states that stroke is the third leading cause of death in Canada and the tenth largest contributor to disability-adjusted life years (the number of years lost due to ill-health, disability or early death). About 878,500 Canadian adults aged 20+ have experienced a stroke (2018-2019) and with the population aging, more and more Canadians are at risk. This condition often has a significant impact on the ability on one's functionality, negatively affecting independence, employability, productivity, mental health and participation in the community. **In addition, more than 80% of the survivors have a gait impairment.** Rehabilitation is required following a stroke for resulting motor, cognitive and behavioral impairments. Most province public health systems in Canada offers stroke rehabilitation services along with private establishments. The potential for commercial opportunity for PoNS in order to support all these public and private establishments is wide. PoNS Therapy offers new opportunities for this type of service by enhancing physical rehabilitation and helping attain the desired goals.

**PoNS Clinical Trials and Scientific Support in MS**

There are two peer-reviewed published studies reporting on the results of clinical trials comparing active PoNS + PT vs a no frequency pulse sham device (placebo PoNS) + PT in subjects with mild and moderate MS: Tyler et al. Journal of **NeuroEngineering** **Neuro Engineering** and Rehabilitation 2014, 11:79 and Leonard et al. Multiple Sclerosis Journal Experimental, Translational and Clinical January-March 2017: 19 DOI: 10.1177/ 2055217317690561

Summary results of the Tyler study in 20 subjects with mild and moderate MS:

- The study was designed as a between-group comparison of the Dynamic Gait Index (DGI) score improvement in 10 subjects treated with active PoNS, in conjunction with two weeks of treatment in clinic under supervision of a registered PoNS trainer, and, individually, at home over 12 weeks, as compared to 10 subjects treated with placebo PoNS and the same physical therapy regimen, after a total of 14 weeks of treatment.
- The primary endpoint demonstrated a statistically significant improvement greater than 4 points in the DGI score from baseline in the active PoNS group as compared to placebo at endpoint (Week 14) ( $p<0.005$ ).
- The DGI improvement was already clinically meaningful at 2 weeks of treatment and continued to increase over the following 8 weeks of therapy with an average improvement of 7.7 point, which was then maintained (slightly increased) through week 14.

9

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

Summary results from the Leonard study in 14 patients treated with mild and moderate MS:

- A statistically significant improvement in the NeuroCom Sensory Organization Test (SOT), a test of subject's ability to balance, from baseline to week 14 of treatment in 7 subjects treated with active PoNS as compared to the 7 subjects in placebo PoNS group ( $p=0.001$ ).
- Functional MRI data showed an increased blood oxygen dependent level (BOLD) signal in specific brain cortical areas, suggesting that sustained PoNS neuromodulation-induced activation of these cortical areas is likely to trigger a series of adaptive changes (neuroplasticity), expected to rehabilitate existing pathways as well as engage new mechanisms to deliver functional signals to the spinal cord, that may correlate with PoNS therapeutic outcomes observed in the Tyler study.

9

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

Summary of Real-World Evidence (RWE) in MS patients treated with PoNS in Canada.

- Gait deficit treatment outcomes for PoNS-treated individuals are routinely captured through a proprietary validated data capture software. At the time of this retrospective analysis, all data from the MS treated subjects available in our database, specifically 43 MS subjects treated with PoNS for gait deficit in Canada between March 2019 and December 2019, were utilized.
- The mean improvement in the FGA (functional gait assessment) from baseline to Week 14 was 4.53 (95% CI 3.35 to 5.72) with a median improvement of 5 points.
- A minimal detectable change, greater or equal to 4 point FGA improvement, was met by 56.7% of subjects, most of whom had chronic MS with long durations of the disease.
- An analysis of the surveillance safety database demonstrated an excellent safety profile supporting a positive benefit-risk ratio in the real-world clinical utilization setting.

#### **PoNS Clinical Trials and Scientific Support in mmTBI**

There are two peer-reviewed published studies reporting on the clinical trials' results of the PoNS Therapy in people with mmTBI. The first is from our registrational clinical trial (TBI-001): Ptito A, Papa, L, Gregory, K, Folmer, RL, Walker, WC, Prabhakaran, V, Wardini, R, Skinner, KL, Yochelson, M, (2020). "A Prospective, Multicenter Study to Assess the Safety and Efficacy of Translingual Neurostimulation Plus Physical Therapy for the Treatment of a Chronic Balance Deficit Due to Mild-to-Moderate Traumatic Brain Injury". *Neuromodulation: Technology at the Neural Interface*. The second is from the Long-Term Treatment study in mmTBI Trial: Tyler, ME, Skinner, KL, Prabhakaran, V, Kaczmarek, KA, Danilov, YP (2019). "Translingual neurostimulation for the treatment of chronic symptoms due to mild-to-moderate traumatic brain injury." *Archives of Rehabilitation Research and Clinical Translation*; 1(304):100026.

#### **PoNS Registrational Clinical Trial in mmTBI**

Both studies were double-blind randomized, controlled, aiming to assess the safety and effectiveness of the PoNS Therapy using translingual noninvasive electric stimulation in conjunction with physical therapy performed in clinic for the first two weeks of treatment under supervision of a registered PoNS trainer, and, individually, at home over a short-term period of time (3 or 12 weeks) for a total of 5- or 14-week therapy, respectively for the short- and long-term studies. Both trials enrolled chronic (> 1 year post head trauma event) TBI subjects with a balance deficit established as sensory organizational test (SOTT) composite score of at least 16 points below the normative value for the participant's age, who have reached a plateau in their prior physical rehabilitation regimen outcome. According to published clinical trial data, balance impaired TBI subjects treated with physical therapy alone reached an average improvement of 10-13 points in their SOT composite score over a short-term treatment period, an improvement that trended back towards baseline values upon physical therapy discontinuation. In both PoNS studies, participants entered the trial with an average SOT composite score of 40 (1-100 range) indicative of compromised functional balance and were randomized to treatment with PoNS devices that delivered either a high-frequency pulse, or HFP, (25.7 million pulses per 20 minute treatment) or a low-frequency pulse, or LFP, (13,728 pulses per 20 minute treatment).

In both studies, the primary efficacy endpoint was constructed for a between-group (HFP-treated and LFP-treated cohorts) comparison based on a greater than 15-point SOT composite score improvement at endpoint. The statistical

10

---

[Table of Contents](#)

plans also provided for a key secondary efficacy endpoint that established the treatment response (> 15 points on SOT composite score) from baseline in the pooled HFP and LFP groups at endpoint(s), should the primary measure failed to establish a significant difference between the HFP and LFP treatment groups.

Summary results of the registrational study (Ptito et al. 2020) in mild to moderate TBI subjects with balance deficit:

- The trial, launched in 2015 in conjunction with the U.S. Army Medical Research and Materiel Command, or the USAMRMC and conducted at seven sites in the U.S. and Canada, evaluated 122 randomized subjects.
- The primary efficacy endpoint, although failing to demonstrate a between-group difference ( $p<0.081$ ), showed a higher responder rate in the HFP arm with 71.2% of subjects experiencing a greater than 15-point

10

---

[Table of Contents](#)

improvement on the SOT composite score) as compared to 63.5% in the LFP arm over a 5-week treatment period.

- The key secondary efficacy endpoints demonstrated a statistically significant increase ( $p<0.0005$ ) in SOT composite scores from baseline for the pooled arms with a mean improvement of 18.3 points at two weeks of treatment and of 24.6 points at five weeks of treatment.
- The primary safety endpoint demonstrated a decrease in the frequency of falls as determined by daily event(s) during the in-clinic phase of the study (week two).
- The secondary safety endpoint demonstrated a decrease in the frequency and severity of headaches (by the Headache Disability Index) from baseline to end of treatment (at week 5).
- No device-related serious adverse events were observed.

Summary of the results of the 26-week long-term treatment study (2019) [study](#) in people with mmTBI:

- The study, performed to evaluate [understand](#) the durability of response to the PoNS Therapy over a 26-week period (14 weeks [14-week](#) therapy followed by 12-week washout period) conducted at the Tactile Communication Neurorehabilitation Laboratory at the University of Wisconsin-Madison and sponsored by the U.S. Army, enrolled 22 mild-to-moderate subjects with gait deficit.

- The primary efficacy endpoint, although similar to the registrational study, did not show a separation on the composite SOT score improvement between the HFP and LFP groups, confirmed the trend of a higher response rate in the HFP group.
- The secondary endpoint showed a 29.8-point improvement of the composite SOT score from baseline in the HFP-treated group at the end of 14 weeks of treatment.
- At the end of the 12 week 12-week washout period, the participants maintained, on average, the same SOT composite score achieved over the 14 weeks of PoNS Therapy.
- The study confirmed the favorable safety profile shown in the registrational study.

These studies demonstrated that the PoNS Therapy could, on average, allow people with mmTBI who had balance deficit reach, over 14 weeks of treatment, and maintain, over 12 week 12-week post-treatment, an SOT composite score within or above the normal range. Furthermore, in a subset of nine participants, who underwent sequential magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans, showed meaningful structural and functional changes in specific brain areas consistent with PoNS therapeutic effect on the balance function.

#### PoNS Clinical Evidence and Scientific Support in Stroke

In a clinical study (2017) published by Dr. Mary Galea, PoNS Therapy displayed a statistically significant effect on improving balance deficit after 2 weeks of intense physical therapy rehabilitation with PoNS, as compared to high-intensity physical therapy alone. The study was conducted in an in-patient rehabilitation setting on 10 patients who were in the subacute stroke phase and with therapy intensity higher than in most stroke rehabilitation settings.

11

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

The following is a summary of the real-world evidence ("RWE") database analysis of stroke patients treated with PoNS in Australia:

- The combined intervention with PoNS was significantly more effective than high intensity physiotherapy alone for the rehabilitation of balance in stroke survivors.
- After two weeks of therapy, the median score on the Mini-BEST was 22.0 in the PoNS-treated group, compared to 13 in the control group, providing a clinically significant and meaningful therapeutic outcome, especially when considering that a cut-off score of 17.5 has been shown to discriminate between fallers and non-fallers with chronic stroke (> 6 months).

Gait deficit treatment outcomes for PoNS-treated individuals were analyzed through a real-world evidence (RWE) RWE retrospective analysis of clinical data from 10 clinical rehabilitation settings in Canada sites. The RWE dataset consisted of 31 consecutive stroke patients that started treatment between March 2019 and November 2022. Patients included in this data set met the criteria for mild to moderate chronic stroke based on the rating of gait (walking) ability. Gait performance was determined using the FGA. FGA at Baseline and at Week 14, as well as changes from Baseline to Week 14 and FGA values at intermediate time points were summarized using means, standard deviations, medians, minimum and maximum values and where appropriate using 95% confidence intervals.

Summary of RWE database analysis in stroke patients treated with PoNS in Canada:

- The adjusted mean improvement in the Functional Gait Assessment (FGA) was 6.74 (95% CI: 4.85 to 8.63) among 30 subjects. The lower bound of this confidence interval exceeds the reported minimum detectable change (MDC) of 4.2 points for improvements in FGA in stroke patients.
- 18 of 26 (69.2%) subjects with complete data at baseline and at Week 14 had improvements larger than the MDC (95% 2-sided binomial exact CI 51.5% to 87.0%).

11

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

- Among subjects with evaluable baseline and Week 14 FGA, 25 of 26 (96.2%) subjects were at risk for falling at baseline (FGA<23). Among the 25 subjects with baseline fall risk, 7 (28%) subjects were no longer at risk for falling at Week 14. The one subject not at fall risk at baseline remained not at fall risk at Week 14.
- There was no statistically reliable evidence that effectiveness varies by age, gender, or clinical site.

#### **Safety and Tolerability Profile of PoNS Therapy**

PoNS Therapy has an excellent high safety profile. Overall, the therapy is safe and well tolerated. Reported adverse events were mild and typically related to baseline comorbidities and not PoNS treatment. In Dr. Galea's two-week randomized controlled study, no serious device-related adverse events were reported for any subject treated with PoNS. Similarly, in the MS and TBI randomized studies, there were no serious PoNS device-related adverse events in any disease groups. Furthermore, there were reductions from baseline in fall rate and in the Headache Disability Index ("HDI") and improvements in sleep quality were also reported in the TBI studies.

The PoNS device has been used in clinical rehabilitation settings with over 480 patients since March 4, 2019 to treat balance and gait disorders with more than 180,000 patient sessions recorded. An exhaustive search of the HMI complaint records for 33 patients identified with a diagnosis of stroke yields a total of 13,960 patient sessions and no serious device-related events have been recorded along with zero reportable adverse events.

#### **Regulatory Status Worldwide**

##### **Canadian Regulatory Status: mmTBI, MS and MS Stroke**

On October 17, 2018, we received our Canadian marketing authorization from Health Canada allowing us to commercialize the PoNS device in Canada for use as a short-term treatment (14 weeks) of balance deficit due to mmTBI.

12

---

#### **Table of Contents**

On March 18, 2020, we received marketing authorization from Health Canada allowing us to commercialize the PoNS device in Canada for the treatment of gait deficit in patients with mild and moderate MS symptoms. Our market authorization application comprised objective statistical evidence as well as independently reviewed clinical research analysis. This label expansion expanded our addressable market in Canada to include a patient population seeking treatment options that may resolve or delay the progression of MS gait deficit symptoms.

On March 8, 2023, we received marketing authorization from Health Canada allowing us to commercialize the PoNS device in Canada for use as a short-term treatment of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from stroke. This expands our addressable market in Canada to include a patient population seeking treatment options that may resolve stroke gait deficit symptoms.

#### **U.S. Regulatory Status: MS**

On May 7, 2020, we received Breakthrough Designation for the PoNS device as a potential treatment for gait deficit due to symptoms of MS, to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program. The goal of the Breakthrough Devices Program is to provide patients and health care providers with timely access to these medical devices by speeding up their development, assessment, and review, while preserving the statutory standards for premarket approval, 510(k) clearance, and de novo classification and clearance, consistent with FDA's mission to protect and promote public health.

The Breakthrough Devices Program offers manufacturers an opportunity to interact with the FDA to efficiently address topics as they arise during the premarket review phase, which can help manufacturers receive feedback from the FDA and identify areas of agreement in a timely way. Manufacturers can also expect prioritized review of their submission.

Breakthrough Device Designation does not change the requirements for approval of an application for a marketing authorization.

On March 26, 2021, we received marketing authorization from the FDA of the PoNS device. The PoNS device is indicated for use as a short-term treatment of gait deficit due to mild-to-moderate symptoms of MS and is to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program in patients 22 years of age and over by prescription only.

On February 29, 2024, we received Healthcare Common Procedure Coding System (HCPCS) codes for the PoNS controller and for the PONS mouthpiece, which will become effective on April 1, 2024.

We will continue monitoring the development by Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Service ("CMS") of a new pathway for coverage of innovative new devices, Transitional Coverage of Emerging Technology ("TCET"), which is replacing the repealed Medicare Coverage of Innovative Technologies ("MCIT") rule. CMS is expected to share more about TCET with the public for comments in 2023, 2024. As we follow the evolution of TCET, we will continue to assess our evidence generation strategy to maximize the potential to gain CMS reimbursement benefits as a result of our Breakthrough designation in MS. While we will continue to monitor this, we will also remain focused on building out our reimbursement strategy for both commercial and government payers. We are still working to understand current Medicare requirements and policies for coverage, coding, and payment of durable medical equipment and assess how the PoNS device may be treated with respect to coding, coverage, and reimbursement under the Medicare program.

12

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

We also intend to provide broad access and reimbursement for the PoNS Therapy over time through commercial insurers. Prior to the initiation of CMS or broad commercial payer coverage, we anticipate the primary source of sales will be have been self-pay patients. We expect to continue to support the cost of the PoNS Therapy by offering a cash pay discount, collaborating with third parties to provide self-pay patients with financing options as well as working with advocacy groups and charitable organizations to help self-pay patients access our technology. In general, we anticipate that it will take at least 24 months to obtain broad coverage and reimbursement among government and private payers. payers once HCPCS codes become effective.

In September 2021, we started activities to set up and implement a new study as part of a Therapeutic Experience Program, or PoNSTEP, with NYU Langone Health as our first Center of Excellence clinical site. During 2022, Since then, we have added four five additional clinical sites to the program and recruitment program. Recruitment site information can be found on clinicaltrials.gov. PoNSTEP is a Helius-sponsored, open label observations, interventional multi-center outcome research trial designed to assess adherence to on-label PoNS therapy Therapy for improvement in gait deficits with MS in a real-world clinical setting. The

13

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

study will measure measures subjects' adherence to PoNS therapy, Therapy, which combines the PoNS device with physical therapy, to better understand the relationship between adherence to the treatment regimen and therapeutic functional outcome. The primary endpoint of the study is maintenance of gait improvement from the end of supervised therapy (Phase 1) to the end of unsupervised therapy (Phase 2) in relation to the subject's adherence to PoNS therapy, Therapy. The secondary endpoints are improvement of gait and balance deficit over time, and clinical global impression of change. The study will be conducted at eight to ten Centers of Excellence across the U.S., with an estimated average of four PoNS devices per site. Enrollment commenced in the second half of 2022 and is expected to be completed in 2023, 2024 with targeted participation of approximately forty to fifty patients with MS.

#### **U.S. Regulatory Status: Stroke**

In August 2021, we received Breakthrough Designation for the PoNS device as a potential treatment for dynamic gait and balance deficits due to symptoms from stroke, to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program in patients 22 years of age and over. With Breakthrough Designation received, a clinical trial of PoNS therapy, Therapy in stroke patients participants in collaboration with Medical University of South Carolina is planned to commence commenced in 2023 with initial patient enrollments beginning in the second half of 2023.

An open label study to evaluate the therapeutic benefit of PoNS in chronic stroke subjects will start enrolling participants in the first quarter 2024 in three sites in the U.S. and Canada as part of our registrational program for gait and balance deficit due to stroke. Enrollment for both studies is expected to be completed by the end of 2024 with a submission to FDA targeted for mid-to-late 2025.

#### ***U.S. Regulatory Status: mmTBI***

Our U.S. regulatory strategy initially focused on pursuing de novo classification and clearance of the PoNS device from the FDA for the treatment of balance deficit due to mmTBI.

We submitted a request for de novo classification and clearance of the PoNS device to the FDA for this indication in August 2018. This request was supported by data from two of our clinical trials in mmTBI, including our registrational trial, TBI-001.

In April 2019, we announced that the FDA had completed its review and had denied our request for de novo classification and clearance of the PoNS device for the treatment of balance deficit due to mmTBI. In reaching its conclusion, the FDA noted, via a denial letter, that although the safety profile of the PoNS device is acceptable, the FDA did not have sufficient information to discern the relative independent contributions of the PoNS device and physical therapy on the improvements from baseline. The FDA noted that we could generate additional data to address its concerns and resubmit our application.

In October 2019, we had a pre-submission meeting where the FDA provided feedback needed to help complete the design of a new clinical trial intended to address the FDA's request for a trial that demonstrates the benefit of the PoNS Therapy compared to physical therapy alone. In January 2020, we received the FDA's feedback on the minutes from the October 2019 pre-submission meeting. In its feedback, the FDA provided post-meeting notes with specific recommendations regarding the trial design that were not discussed in the October 2019 pre-submission meeting.

Based on the receipt of the FDA's final minutes from the pre-submission meeting, we are assessing the feasibility of a clinical program to advance the development of a study aimed to obtain clearance for gait and balance deficits in mmTBI if nondilutive financing to fund the program becomes available.

13

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### ***European Regulatory Status***

In December 2018, we submitted an application for CE certification with a CE Mark, notified body in the European Union ("EU"), which, if approved, would allow us to CE mark and market the PoNS device in the EU. During the second quarter of 2019, we engaged with regulators our notified body in Europe to answer questions that we received from them as part of their review the conformity assessment of our PoNS device for CE marking, certification. In August 2019, we withdrew our application from the EU marketing process to be CE certified due to uncertainty in Europe caused by the switch from the Medical Device Directive, or MDD, to the Medical Device Regulation, or MDR, Brexit, and the withdrawal of Lloyd's Register Quality Assurance, our notified body, from the EU

14

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

notified body business. We have engaged G-MED NA (North America) as our new ISO registrar and will reconsider submitting to the EU when conditions stabilize.

#### **Australian Regulatory Status**

In the third quarter of 2019, we initiated the submission of our application to the Therapeutic Goods Administration, or TGA. We supplemented our submission with additional data based on questions supplied to date and provided responses to additional questions during the third quarter of 2020. In November 2021, we received market authorization from the TGA for the sale of PoNS as a Class **Ia** **Ia** medical device. In Australia, PoNS is intended for short term use by healthcare professionals as an adjunct to a therapeutic exercise program to improve balance and gait. PoNS is not intended to be used alone without an exercise program.

#### **HTC Exclusive Distribution Agreement**

On March 3, 2023, we entered into an Exclusive Distribution Agreement with Health Tech Connex, Inc. ("HTC") ("HTC Exclusivity Agreement"), whereby, subject to certain terms and conditions, we granted to HTC the exclusive right to provide the PoNS Therapy in the Fraser Valley and Vancouver metro regions of British Columbia, where HTC has operated a PoNS authorized clinic since February 2019. HTC **is to purchase** **purchases** the PoNS devices for use in these regions exclusively from us and on terms no less favorable than the then-current standard terms and conditions. This **HTC** Exclusivity Agreement replaces the previous Clinical Research and Co-Promotion Agreement ("HTC Co-Promotion Agreement") between the parties dated October 2019.

#### **Product Development, Manufacturing and Logistics Services**

The commercial design of the PoNS device is **currently** manufactured and assembled by Key Tronic Corporation ("Key Tronic"), our contract manufacturing partner since 2017, at its facility located in Oakdale, Minnesota. Key Tronic manufactures devices for engineering and design verification testing and for our FDA submission as well as commercial devices for launch inventory. **During the third quarter of 2023, the Company began implementing the transition of the manufacturing of PoNS device controllers and mouthpieces from Key Tronic has multiple locations across the U.S., Mexico and China with back-up manufacturing capabilities to help mitigate the risk of a single source provider.** Minnetronix, Inc in St. Paul, MN. The Company expects this transition to be fully completed by mid-2024. We remain ultimately responsible for the compliance of our submissions and products and for the activities performed on our behalf.

We place an emphasis on protecting our patented technology, trade secrets and know-how and only share confidential information on an as needed basis. **Both Minnetronix and Key Tronic is** **are registered as a medical device manufacturer** **manufacturers** in good standing with the FDA and along with Cambridge **Consultants, our design services supplier**, are certified in accordance with International Organization for Standardization, or ISO, 13485, a comprehensive quality management system for the design and manufacture of medical devices. HMI maintains a compliant quality management system certified to ISO 13485:2016 and compliant with MDSAP requirements for the U.S., Canada and **Australia** **Australia**.

During 2021, we contracted with Healthlink International Inc. ("Healthlink") to provide third party logistics for domestic and Canadian shipment and order fulfillment, and to provide warehousing services for finished goods. Healthlink began fulfilling orders in the United States effective with the commencement of commercial sales in the United States in April 2022 and in Canada during the fourth quarter of 2022. Healthlink is a life science solutions company, specializing in logistics, temperature-controlled warehousing, fulfillment and freight management as well as back-office services, including multilingual customer service, financial services and VAT management.

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### **Commercialization**

##### **Canadian Commercialization Efforts**

In March 2019, we commenced the commercialization of our PoNS Therapy in Canada, where PoNS became the first and only device authorized by Health Canada for the treatment of balance deficit due to mmTBI. Throughout 2019, we made important progress in advancing and refining our commercialization strategy in Canada building access, awareness and credibility for the PoNS Therapy, including the acquisition of the Heuro Canada, Inc. ("Heuro") operating entity of

---

[Table of Contents](#)

HTC. These efforts, which were led by our local Canadian commercial team, included the establishment of our authorized clinic network throughout Canada, launching digital marketing campaigns, and building key opinion leader and advocacy networks.

On March 18, 2020, the Company received notification that its Canadian Class II license amendment application for the treatment of gait deficit in patients with mild and moderate symptoms from MS, when used in conjunction with physical therapy, was successful and received marketing authorization for PoNS from Health Canada.

On March 9, 2023, we announced the authorization from Health Canada to market PoNS Therapy for the treatment of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from stroke. This indication is instrumental as it is one of the most significant indications impacting balance and gait in Canada, and it provides the opportunity to extend options for coverage through government and third-party payers.

Following in-depth market analysis and field intelligence, our Canadian commercial team began an expansion plan to increase the number of authorized PoNS clinics. During the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we authorized 1122 new clinical locations to have 4881 clinic locations across Canada as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023. In addition to continuing to increase the number of clinic locations, we have shifted our focus to driving patient throughput to these clinics. Sales performance in Canada throughout 2021 and into 2022 has been impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic due to space restrictions that the provincial governments have imposed as well as the risk tolerance of patients and therapists.

We continue to refine our go-to-market pricing model. In 2020, we implemented a modified pricing approach which is focused on reducing the need for clinics and patients to pay large, upfront costs at the start of treatment. We have also experimented with various promotional pricing programs resulting in lower unit prices for both PoNS system purchases and mouthpieces in order to increase access to the PoNS Therapy and drive market awareness which we believe resulted in an increase in the volume of units sold, beginning in the second half of 2020. We extended the promotional pricing through the end of 2021 including any order placed and accepted, but not fulfilled before December 31, 2021. The promotional pricing was discontinued in 2022 when new pricing was established which focuses on encouraging the clinic in proposing the PoNS therapy to their patient and established a volume discount program that provides a laddered pricing discount to clinics based upon PoNS purchases in an effort to make a difference in the outcomes to their patients and enhance their practice.

The value dossiers for mmTBI, stroke and MS that were created in mid-2020 to fully demonstrate in both scientific and financial terms, the merits of PoNS Therapy for claimants are now being utilized along with submissions from clinics on behalf of their patients. The dossiers are provided to our clinics across Canada to submit as part of treatment plans with reimbursement applications to the payer community. Our reimbursement strategy for mmTBI is focused initially on the auto collision insurance and workers' compensation or WC, ("WC"), market as well as long-term disability cases. Our reimbursement strategy for MS is focused on commercial insurers/extended health benefits and charitable foundations that support these patient conditions. Our reimbursement strategy for stroke is focused on private payers while also demonstrating to public health organizations the benefits and potential PoNS Therapy could provide within their respective networks.

As part of our overall PoNS Therapy strategy, we are also gathering comprehensive health economic assessments of treatment outcomes. These data will, in-turn, be used to support our applications for WC, auto insurance and commercial insurance reimbursement initiatives in Canada, the U.S. and other markets around the world. We believe the Canadian commercial experience will be extremely valuable to prepare us for our launches in the U.S. and internationally.

The real-world results from the collective experience of our patients that have completed the 14-week PoNS Therapy, in Canada thus far, have been encouraging. Consistent with what we observed in our two clinical trials, one for 5 weeks and the other for 14 weeks, commercial MS and mmTBI patients demonstrated improvements in balance and gait within the first two weeks followed by continued improvement over the following twelve weeks. The majority of patients had a mean patient adherence to treatment of over 90% and showed significant improvement in their balance and gait with a meaningful clinical difference at the end of their treatment. Similar results were observed in the treatment of patients with symptoms from stroke. The consistency of the patient results from our initial commercial experience supports our plans to expand access PoNS Therapy in Canada.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

### **U.S. Commercialization Activities**

On March 26, 2021, we received marketing authorization from the FDA for the PoNS device. The PoNS device is indicated for use as a short term treatment of gait deficit due to mild-to-moderate symptoms of MS and is to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program in patients 22 years of age and over by prescription only.

Throughout the pre-commercial phase during 2021 and early 2022, we developed and refined our commercial strategy including a focus on payer strategy, both government and commercial, securing distribution licenses in various states and beginning to build relationships with key large neurorehabilitation centers, which focus on treatment of MS patients. We continue to generate data on outcomes of the PoNS Therapy generated from treatment of patients in Canada and ensuring that our scientific data is presented at many of the key national and international neurology and neuromodulation meetings. We believe this scientific dissemination may begin to pave the way to establishing the PoNS Therapy as the standard of care for the treatment of MS-related gait deficit.

16

---

[Table of Contents](#)

We began accepting prescriptions for PoNS in the U.S. in the first quarter of 2022, and our first commercial sales began in April 2022. Presently, PoNS Therapy is not covered by the Medicare program or reimbursed by any other payors in the U.S.

We have targeted specific Key Opinion Leaders (i.e., neurologists and physiatrists) and their associated neurorehabilitation centers, where selected physical therapists will be trained to deliver the PoNS Therapy. Importantly, this focused strategy will also allow us to measure patient outcomes to determine if they are similar to those observed in our clinical trials.

In June 2022, we launched the Patient Therapy Access Program ("PTAP") program, which will provide provided qualifying patients access to PoNS therapy Therapy at a significantly reduced price. To qualify for Through the PTAP pricing, program, the patient must provide a letter of medical necessity and consent to the release of their medical records. Because of the significantly reduced price, the patient must also sign a document that prohibits him/her from submitting a reimbursement claim to third-party payers. PTAP participants are also invited to join the Company's registry program, which is open to all MS patients regardless of their PTAP participation. The PoNS registry is structured to collect Company collected important health information and establish that helped gain insight into the value of PoNS on key therapeutic outcomes hence supplementing that supplemented the data collected through clinical trials and real-world data. We began processing orders under the The PTAP program in June 2022, which is expected to run through June 2023, was not renewed and terminated on June 30, 2023.

In December 2022, we launched an e-commerce site in the US to make it easier for patients to obtain PoNS systems, devices, and began processing orders in January 2023. Accessed via ponstherapy.com, the site is powered through a new partnership with UpScriptHealth, a leading telehealth company focused on making medications and devices available direct-to-consumer. UpScriptHealth's platform provides for (1) online health evaluations with qualified medical providers, (2) fulfillment of prescriptions required for PoNS Therapy™ Therapy and (3) shipping of PoNS devices directly to the homes of eligible patients in the United States. The UpScriptHealth platform makes it possible for people with MS to have a PoNS device delivered directly to their doorstep.

During 2021, we contracted with an industry consultant to conduct a health economic study of PoNS. Based upon the results of this study and comparing PoNS to other medical devices utilizing similar patented technologies we established a U.S. list price for the PoNS device of \$25,700, comprised of \$17,800 for the controller and \$7,900 for the mouthpiece. We are pursuing commercial insurance coverage and Medicare reimbursement for PoNS within the Durable Medical Equipment or DME, ("DME"), benefit category. While there are currently no specific We initially applied for unique Healthcare Common Procedure Coding System or HCPCS, codes to describe the PoNS device or mouthpiece, we intend to use miscellaneous codes – E1399 (Miscellaneous durable medical equipment) and A9999 (Miscellaneous DME supply or accessory, not otherwise specified) until specific HCPCS codes are created. We initially applied for unique HCPCS ("HCPCS") codes

during the third quarter of 2021. In order to address CMS's request for additional information to "further understand the PoNS device indication for use", we decided to monitor real-world utilization of PoNS Therapy and collect additional clinical evidence through our ongoing PoNSTEP study and **upcoming** our registry program. Based on consistent reports of positive therapeutic benefits experienced by MS patients through our commercial programs, we **plan to re-engage** **reapplied for** HCPCS codes in **our communication with CMS** **the second quarter of 2023** leveraging new information, **that can answer** **addressing** their questions and **argue convincingly** **providing further support** in favor of obtaining unique

16

---

[Table of Contents](#)

HCPCS codes for PoNS. In February 2024, CMS assigned HCPCS Level II codes A4593, "Neuromodulation stimulator system, adjunct to rehabilitation therapy regime" to describe the PoNS controller and A4594, "Neuromodulation stimulator system, adjunct to rehabilitation therapy regime, mouthpiece each" to describe the PoNS mouthpiece. The new HCPCS codes will be effective April 1, 2024. We expect to interact again with CMS in the second half of 2023, 2024 – to seek Medicare final payment determinations for both codes to be effective at the next scheduled date of October 1, 2024. Concurrently, we will be approaching various third-party payers to negotiate coverage under these codes. In general, we anticipate that it will take at least 24 months to obtain broad coverage and reimbursement among government and private payers. **payers once the HCPCS codes become effective.**

**Commercialization in Other Markets**

We submitted an application **for a to be** CE **Mark certified** in December 2018. In preparation for our launch in the United Kingdom or UK, ("UK"), and the EU, we entered into a consulting agreement with a UK-based company with expertise in the development of new services in the healthcare industry to leverage local market insights to develop a comprehensive commercialization strategy and tactical plan for launch of the PoNS Therapy in the UK. As previously described, in August 2019, we withdrew our application **for to be** EU **market authorization** **certified** and will revisit our UK and EU commercialization plans as terms of **market authorization** **CE/UKCA certification** become clearer under the new regulations.

We submitted an application to the TGA in Australia during the third quarter of 2019. We supplemented our submission with additional data based on questions supplied to date and provided responses to additional questions during the third quarter of 2020. In November 2021, we received market authorization from the TGA for the sale of PoNS as a Class IIa medical device. In Australia, PoNS is authorized as a non-implantable neurostimulator intended for short term used by

17

---

[Table of Contents](#)

healthcare professionals as an adjunct to a therapeutic exercise program to improve balance and gait. PoNS is not intended to be used alone without an exercise program. We are working to establish a distribution partner for Australia but have not yet had any commercial sales of PoNS in Australia.

**Global Economic Conditions**

Generally, worldwide economic conditions remain uncertain, **particularly** **in** **part** **due to** **the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic** **supply chain disruptions, labor shortages, global conflicts** and increased inflation. The general economic and capital market conditions both in the U.S. and worldwide, **have been** **volatile** **in** **the past** **recent years** and at times have adversely affected our access to capital and **have** **increased** **the cost** **of capital**. The capital and credit markets may not be available to support future capital raising activity on favorable terms. If economic

conditions continue to remain volatile or decline, our future cost of equity or debt capital and access to the capital markets could be adversely affected.

The COVID-19 pandemic that began in late 2019 introduced significant volatility to the global economy, disrupted supply chains and had a widespread adverse effect on the financial markets. Additionally, our operating results could be materially impacted by changes in the overall macroeconomic environment and other economic factors. Changes in economic conditions, supply chain constraints, logistics challenges, labor shortages, global conflicts such as the conflict in Ukraine and in the Middle East, and steps taken by governments and central banks particularly in response to the COVID-19 pandemic as well as other stimulus and spending programs, have led to higher inflation, which has led to an increase in costs and has caused changes in fiscal and monetary policy, including increased interest rates. Although we may take measures to mitigate these impacts, if these measures are not effective, our business, financial condition, results of operations, and liquidity could be materially adversely affected.

#### **Coverage and Reimbursement**

##### **Canadian Reimbursement**

We believe that traditional life and health payers may be among the earliest to provide coverage and reimbursement for the PoNS Therapy, and therefore, we are focusing on gaining coverage for the PoNS Therapy through them. Life and health encompass long- and short-term disability claims. Because these payers are responsible for both medical expenses and lost wages, they have an incentive to seek ways to help injured employees to return to work. As part of our commercial treatment program in Canada, we will collect both outcomes and return to work data, which we plan to utilize with life and health, provincial workers compensation insurance programs, and property and casualty insurers to demonstrate both the clinical and economic value associated with the PoNS Therapy.

##### **U.S. Reimbursement**

In the U.S., we plan to engage with select payer segments to obtain coverage and reimbursement for the PoNS Therapy. We intend to combine evidence from our clinical trials and real-world experience from commercial clinics in Canada to

17

---

##### **Table of Contents**

demonstrate the value proposition of the PoNS Therapy to payers and support favorable coverage and reimbursement decisions.

Significant uncertainty exists regarding the coverage and reimbursement status of products approved by the FDA and other government authorities. In the United States, sales of our products depend in significant part on the availability and adequacy of coverage and reimbursement from third party payors for our product and for services that use our products. Third-party payors include government authorities such as Medicare and Medicaid, managed care providers, private health insurers, and other organizations. The process for determining whether a payor will provide coverage may be separate from the process for setting the reimbursement rate that the payor will pay for the product or service. Moreover, a payor's decision to provide coverage does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the prices charged for, examining the medical necessity, safety, and efficacy of, and assessing the cost-effectiveness of medical products. The U.S. government and state legislatures have shown significant interest in implementing cost containment programs to limit the growth of government-paid health care costs, including price controls and restrictions on reimbursement. Any such downward pressure on the

18

---

reimbursement for our products could limit our ability to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

CMS has indicated that it is developing a **rule** program that would provide a pathway for expedited **transitional** coverage of **emerging** technologies under the Medicare program, though that rule has yet to be released. While we will continue to monitor this, we will also remain focused on building out our reimbursement strategy for both commercial and government payers. We continue to work with Medicare requirements and policies for coverage, coding, and payment of durable medical equipment and assess how the PoNS device may be treated with respect to coding, coverage, and reimbursement under the Medicare program.

### Competition

The neurostimulation market is predominantly comprised of surgically implanted, invasive technologies that are not directly competitive with our technology. Several neurostimulation companies are large, publicly-traded companies that have a history in the market, have significantly easier access to capital and other resources and have an established product pipeline. The combined clinical research and product development done by the industry, including by us and all of our competitors, is uncovering the beneficial effects of neurostimulation which now establishes neuromodulation as a valid and scientifically supported approach to the treatment of neurological conditions, and accordingly, we expect for competition in the non-implantable space to grow in the future.

However, we believe that we will have the first-mover advantage in the non-implantable neurostimulation space.

We believe that the PoNS Therapy introduces an innovative target and method of stimulation, because targeting the tongue for neurostimulation provides several advantages that competitively distinguish the PoNS Therapy, which are discussed below.

### ***Advantages of the PoNS Therapy***

We believe that the PoNS Therapy offers the following benefits over existing neurostimulation technologies:

- The PoNS device stimulates the trigeminal nerve, which developing science has implicated to be beneficial in some neurological disorder models. Specifically, PoNS stimulates only one branch of the trigeminal nerve, the lingual nerve through its terminals in the tongue, while other technologies stimulate other branches of the trigeminal nerve.
- Translingual stimulation also results in stimulating the facial nerve through its chorda tympani branch, which has its nerve terminals in the tongue. Although it's unclear whether concomitant stimulation of additional nerves is material to the efficacy or safety of PoNS, stimulation of these two cranial nerves triggers selective activation of specific cerebellar, brainstem, and cerebral areas involved in the control of movement and coordination functions. Furthermore, the ability to stimulate more than one nerve at a time differentiates our technology from our competition.
- The tongue has an anatomically unique surface with a high density of receptors, a consistently moist and conductive environment, constant pH, constant temperature and a direct connection to the brain through at least two cranial nerves. This a critical feature of how PoNS therapeutic effect is mediated since, similarly to the way most of the pharmacological agents act, translingual stimulation allows direct activation of neural targets that mediate signal transmission to the spinal cord and resulting therapeutic effect.
- Scientific studies suggest that the trigeminal cranial nerves offer a high-bandwidth pathway for impulses to directly affect the central nervous system. The trigeminal nerves project directly onto several areas of the brain, primarily the brainstem (trigeminal and solitary nuclei), cerebellum, cochlear nuclei and spinal cord. Secondary targets include the cerebral premotor, motor, and prefrontal cortices, as well as deep brain areas such as the limbic system, basal ganglia and thalamus. We believe that this range of projections will allow impulses to reach central and peripheral targets that regulate dozens of functions.
- Unlike deep brain stimulation devices, implantable vagal nerve devices and other invasive forms of electrical stimulation, the tongue allows for neurostimulation to be delivered via a portable, non-implantable device. This

1819

---

allows for the concomitant utilization of portable neurostimulation with a wide range of pharmacological therapies and non-pharmacological interventions previously unexplored for neurological rehabilitation.

## Intellectual Property

### Licensed Intellectual Property

Pursuant to the Second Amended and Restated Patent Sub-License, or the Sublicense Agreement, dated June 6, 2014 entered into between Advanced NeuroRehabilitation LLC, or ANR, and HMI, ANR has granted HMI a worldwide, exclusive license to make, have made, use, lease and sell devices utilizing certain patent applications, which are collectively referred to as the "Patent Pending Rights." The Patent Pending Rights relate to the PoNS device and include the following patents and patent applications, which cover a device that noninvasively delivers neurostimulation through the skin or intra-orally to the brain stem via various nerves including the trigeminal and facial nerves:

U.S. Patent Application No.	Application Filing Date	U.S. Status	Patent No.	Issue Date	Subject Matter
12/348,301	1/4/2009	Issued	8,849,407	9/30/2014	Non-invasive neurostimulation of the skin combined with simultaneous physical therapy to provide neurorehabilitation of a patient to treat various maladies including, e.g., TBI, stroke and Alzheimer's disease
14/340,144	7/24/2014	Issued	8,909,345	12/9/2014	Non-invasive neurostimulation within a patient's mouth combined with physical therapy to provide neurorehabilitation of a patient to treat various maladies including, e.g., TBI, stroke, and Alzheimer's disease
14/341,141	7/25/2014	Issued	9,020,612	4/28/2015	Non-invasive neurostimulation within a patient's mouth combined with cognitive therapy to provide neurorehabilitation of a patient resulting in improved reading comprehension and increased attention span as well as the treatment various maladies including, but not limited to, TBI, stroke, and Alzheimer's disease
14/615,766	2/6/2015	Issued	9,656,078	5/23/2017	Non-invasive neurostimulation within a patient's mouth combined with stimulation of the patient's vision, hearing, vestibular systems, or somatosensory systems for the treatment of tinnitus
14/689,462	4/17/2015	Issued	9,597,501	3/21/2017	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a patient's skin combined with cognitive therapy to provide neurorehabilitation of a patient resulting in improved reading comprehension and increased attention span as well as the treatment various maladies including, e.g., TBI, stroke, and Alzheimer's disease
14/815,171	7/31/2015	Issued	9,597,504	3/21/2017	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a patient's mouth combined with therapy to provide neurorehabilitation of a patient, with a focus on features of a neurostimulation device
15/207,029	7/11/2016	Issued	9,656,069	5/23/2017	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a subject's oral cavity while the subject engages in an exercise in order to enhance the subject's proficiency in the exercise
15/283,894	10/3/2016	Issued	10,293,163	5/21/2019	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a subject's oral cavity or skin while the subject engages in a physical or cognitive exercise in order to enhance the subject's proficiency in the exercise
15/602,060	5/22/2017	Issued	10,328,263	6/25/2019	Non-invasive neurostimulation within a patient's mouth or on a patient's skin combined with an exercise for treatment of a disorder affecting sleep patterns
16/376,595	4/5/2019	Issued	11,185,696	11/30/2021	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a subject's oral cavity or skin while the subject engages in a physical or cognitive exercise in order to enhance a subject's proficiency in the exercise
16/450,915	6/24/2019	Issued	11,285,325	3/29/2022	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a subject's oral cavity or skin while the subject engages in a physical or cognitive exercise in order to enhance the subject's proficiency in the exercise
17/704,051	3/25/2022	Pending	N/A	N/A	Non-invasive neurostimulation of a subject's oral cavity or skin while the subject engages in a physical or cognitive exercise in order to enhance the subject's proficiency in the exercise
61/019,061 (Provisional)	1/4/2008	Expired	N/A	N/A	N/A
61/020,265 (Provisional)	1/10/2008	Expired	N/A	N/A	N/A

[Table of Contents](#)

U.S. Patent Nos. 8,909,345; 9,020,612; 9,656,078; 9,597,501; 9,597,504; 9,656,069; 10,293,163; 10,328,263; 11,185,696; and 11,285,325, and U.S. Application No. 17/704,051 claim priority to U.S. Patent No. 8,849,407.

20

---

[Table of Contents](#)

A U.S. provisional patent application provides the means to establish an early effective filing date for a later filed nonprovisional patent application. Therefore, though the two provisional applications have expired, they establish a priority date for U.S. Patent Nos. 8,909,345; 9,020,612; 9,656,078; 9,597,501; 9,597,504; 9,656,069; 10,293,163; 10,328,263; 11,185,696; and 11,285,325, U.S. Application No. 17/704,041, and any future filings that claim priority. We intend to file additional continuation applications in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, claiming priority to U.S. Provisional Patent Application Nos. 61/019,061 and 61/020,265 to protect other aspects of the PoNS device and related non-invasive neurostimulation techniques.

ANR holds an interest in the Patent Pending Rights pursuant to an exclusive license from the inventors. U.S. Patent Nos. 8,909,345; 9,020,612; 9,656,078; 9,597,501; 9,597,504; 9,656,069; 10,293,163; 10,328,263; 11,185,696; and 11,285,325, and U.S. Application No. 17/704,051 are included in the exclusive license as the exclusive license agreement covers (i) U.S. Patent Application No. 12/348,301 (now U.S. Patent No. 8,849,407) and Provisional Application No. 61/019,061, (ii) any patents issuing therefrom and (iii) any patents claiming priority to U.S. Patent Application No. 12/348,301 or Provisional Application No. 61/019,061, which U.S. Patent Nos. 8,909,345; 9,020,612; 9,656,078; 9,597,501; 9,597,504; 9,656,069; 10,293,163; 10,328,263; 11,185,696 and 11,285,325, and U.S. Application No. 17/704,051 claim priority through such provisional application as well as through Provisional Application 61/020,265.

In addition, ANR has agreed that ownership of any improvements, enhancements or derivative works of the Patent Pending Rights that are developed by HMI or ANR shall be owned by HMI, provided that if HMI decides not to patent such improvements, ANR may choose to pursue patent rights independently. Pursuant to the Sublicense Agreement, HMI has agreed to pay ANR royalties equal to 4% of HMI's revenues collected from the sale of devices covered by the Patent Pending Rights and services related to the therapy PoNS Therapy or use of devices covered by the Patent Pending Rights in therapy services. The Sublicense Agreement provides that the sublicense granted by ANR to HMI, if in good standing, shall not be cancelled; limited or impaired in any way should there be a termination of the master license granted by the inventors to ANR, which was acknowledged by the inventors in the Sublicense Agreement. On June 6, 2014, HMI and ANR entered into a second amended and restated sublicense agreement, or the Second Sublicense Agreement, which acknowledges the Reverse Merger (see "Our Corporate History ■■■ Acquisition of Helius Medical, Inc and Concurrent Financing" below) and adds us as a party to the agreement.

The license of the Patent Pending Rights is subject to the right of the government of the United States, which funded certain research relating to the development of the PoNS device, to a nonexclusive, non-transferable, irrevocable, paid up license to use the Patent Pending Rights for governmental purposes. In addition, HMI has granted a perpetual, royalty-free license to the Patent Pending Rights back to ANR for non-profit research and development activities, which do not compete with HMI's business and to produce and derive revenues from devices and services in connection with investigational uses of the PoNS device and related technology.

**Company Owned Intellectual Property**

As of February 15, 2023 February 14, 2024, we have filed 36 U.S. patent applications related to various technical and ornamental aspects of the PoNS device: 15 non-provisional patent applications that describe various technical features in the current version device and 21 design patent applications describing various ornamental designs. We are the sole assignee for these 36 U.S. patent filings. In addition to the first issued patent (U.S. Patent No. 9,072,889), the USPTO has issued 14 utility patents and 21 design patents.

20

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition to our U.S. patents, we have been granted 21 foreign utility patents (nine in Australia, five in Russia, two in Canada, two in Israel, two in Europe (validated in France, Germany, Italy, UK and Spain), one in UK and one in Eurasia, or EA (validated in all eight Eurasian member-states), and 33 foreign design patents (three in Australia, nine in Canada, six in Russia, and fifteen registered community designs in Europe).

Further, we have 12 foreign utility patent applications that are currently pending: three in Europe, two in each of Australia, Canada and Russia and one in each of China, Israel, and the U.K., Israel, and one design patent application that is currently pending in Canada.

21

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Currently, we own rights in five trademarks: PoNS, PoNS Therapy, Helius, Helius Medical, and Helius Medical Technologies. We own the rights to the PoNS mark by virtue of an assignment agreement having an effective date of October 27, 2014 and entered into with ANR and the inventors of the PoNS technology. We are also the owner of the rights in the PoNS Therapy, Helius, Helius Medical, and Helius Medical Technologies marks.

We are the owner of the rights in PoNS, trademark registrations for the Helius and Helius Medical Technologies PoNS Therapy marks in Canada, the U.S. as well as the trademark registration for the Helius mark in Canada and the trademark registrations for the PoNS mark in Europe, Israel, and New Zealand. We have also applied for the PoNS trademark in Europe, Russia, China and Australia, New Zealand and Israel. We have also applied for along with the Helius mark trademark in the U.S., Australia, and Canada, the Helius Medical mark in the U.S., and the PoNS Therapy mark trademark in the U.S.

### **Government Regulation**

Our products under development and our operations are subject to significant government regulation. In the U.S., our products are regulated as medical devices by the FDA and other federal, state, and local regulatory authorities. The following is a general description of the review and marketing authorization process of the FDA for medical devices.

#### **FDA Regulation of Medical Devices**

The FDA and other U.S. and foreign governmental agencies regulate, among other things, the following activities with respect to medical devices:

- design, development and manufacturing;
- testing, labeling, content and language of instructions for use and storage;
- clinical trials;
- product storage and safety;
- marketing, sales and distribution;
- pre-market clearance and approval;
- record keeping procedures;
- advertising and promotion;
- recalls and field safety corrective actions;
- post-market surveillance, including reporting of deaths or serious injuries and malfunctions that, if they were to recur, could lead to death or serious injury;
- post-market approval studies; and
- product import and export.

In the U.S., numerous laws and regulations govern all the processes by which medical devices are brought to market and marketed. These include the Food, Drug, and Cosmetic, or FD&C Act and the FDA's implementation of regulations, among others.

21

---

[Table of Contents](#)

***The FDA Review, Clearance and Approval Processes***

Unless an exemption applies, each medical device commercially distributed in the U.S. requires either FDA clearance of a 510(k) premarket notification, approval of a premarket approval, or PMA, or approval of a de novo application. Under the FDCA, medical devices are classified into one of three classes—Class I, Class II or Class III—depending on the degree of risk associated with each medical device and the extent of manufacturer and regulatory control needed to ensure its safety and effectiveness. Classification of a device is important because the class to which a device is assigned determines, among other things, the necessity and type of FDA review required prior to marketing the device.

Class I devices are those for which safety and effectiveness can be assured by adherence to FDA's "general controls" "general controls" for medical devices, which include compliance with the applicable portions of the FDA's Quality System Regulation, or

22

---

[Table of Contents](#)

QSR, facility registration and product listing, reporting of adverse medical events, and appropriate, truthful and non-misleading labeling, advertising, and promotional materials. Some Class I devices also require premarket clearance by the FDA through the 510(k) premarket notification process described below.

Class II devices are subject to FDA's general controls, and any other "special controls" "special controls" deemed necessary by FDA to ensure the safety and effectiveness of the device, such as performance standards, product-specific guidance documents, special labeling requirements, patient registries or post-market surveillance. Premarket review and clearance by the FDA for Class II devices is accomplished through the 510(k) premarket notification process, though certain Class II devices are exempt from this premarket review process. When a 510(k) is required, the manufacturer must submit to the FDA a premarket notification submission demonstrating that the device is "substantially equivalent" "substantially equivalent" to a legally marketed device, which in some cases may require submission of clinical data. Unless a specific exemption applies, 510(k) premarket notification submissions are subject to user fees. If the FDA determines that the device, or its intended use, is not substantially equivalent to a legally marketed device, the FDA will place the device, or the particular use of the device, into Class III, and the device sponsor must then fulfill much more rigorous premarketing requirements.

Class III devices, consisting of devices deemed by the FDA to pose the greatest risk, such as life-sustaining, life-supporting or implantable devices, or devices deemed not substantially equivalent to a predicate device. The safety and effectiveness of Class III devices cannot be assured solely by general or special controls. Submission and FDA approval of a premarket approval, or PMA, application is required before marketing of a Class III device can proceed. As with 510(k) submissions, unless subject to an exemption, PMA submissions are subject to user fees. The PMA process is much more demanding than the 510(k) premarket notification process. A PMA application, which is intended to demonstrate that the device is safe and effective, must be supported by extensive data, typically including data from preclinical studies and human clinical trials.

Our PoNS device is currently regulated as a Class II medical device for use in MS. However, if the FDA requires us to go through a lengthier, more rigorous examination for the PoNS device for balance and gait deficit in stroke, introducing the product for stroke could be delayed or canceled. For example, if the FDA decides that the de novo classification procedures are not the appropriate path to obtain marketing

authorizations for the PoNS device in stroke, the FDA may require us to submit a PMA application, which is generally more costly and uncertain and can take from one to three years, or longer, from the time the application is submitted to the FDA until an approval is obtained. Further, even with respect to those future products where a PMA may not be required, we cannot be certain that we will be able to obtain 510(k) clearance with respect to our PoNS device.

#### **510(k) Clearance Process**

To obtain 510(k) clearance for a medical device, an applicant must submit to the FDA a premarket notification submission demonstrating that the proposed device is "substantially equivalent" to a legally marketed device, known as a "predicate device." A legally marketed predicate device may include a device that was legally marketed prior to May 28, 1976 for which a PMA is not required (known as a "pre-amendments device" based on the date of enactment of the Medical Device Amendments of 1976), a device that has been reclassified from Class III to Class II or Class I, or a device that was found substantially equivalent through the 510(k) process. A device is substantially equivalent if, with respect to the predicate device, it has the same intended use and has either (i) the same technological characteristics, or (ii) different technological characteristics, but the information provided in the 510(k) submission demonstrates that the

22

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

device does not raise new questions of safety and effectiveness and is at least as safe and effective as the predicate device. A showing of substantial equivalence sometimes, but not always, requires clinical data.

Before the FDA will accept a 510(k) submission for substantive review, the FDA will first assess whether the submission satisfies a minimum threshold of ~~acceptability~~, acceptability through its eSTAR submission form. If the ~~FDA determines that eSTAR does not pass technical screening~~ (i.e., an eSTAR is provided where none of the ~~510(k)~~ attachments to a question are relevant to the question, or if an inaccurate response is provided to any question), the submission may be put on an early Technical Screening hold for 180 days, until a complete replacement eSTAR is incomplete, the FDA will issue a "Refuse to Accept" letter which generally outlines the information the FDA believes is necessary to permit a substantive review and to reach a determination regarding substantial equivalence. submitted. An applicant must submit the requested information before the FDA will proceed with additional review of the submission. Once the 510(k) submission is accepted for review, by regulation, the FDA has 90 days to review and issue a determination. As a practical matter,

23

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

clearance often takes longer. The FDA may require additional information, including clinical data, to make a determination regarding substantial equivalence.

If the FDA agrees that the device is substantially equivalent to a predicate device currently on the market, it will grant 510(k) clearance to commercially market the device. If the FDA determines that the device is "not substantially equivalent" to a previously cleared device, the device is automatically designated as a Class III device. The device sponsor must then fulfill more rigorous PMA requirements, or can request a risk-based classification determination for the device in accordance with the "de novo" process, which is a route to market for novel medical devices that are low to moderate risk and are not substantially equivalent to a predicate device.

After a device receives 510(k) marketing clearance, any modification that could significantly affect its safety or effectiveness, or that would constitute a major change or modification in its intended use, will require a new 510(k) marketing clearance or, depending on the modification, PMA approval. The determination as to whether or not a modification could significantly affect the device's safety or effectiveness is initially left

to the manufacturer using available FDA guidance. Many minor modifications today are accomplished by a “letter to file” in which the manufacturer documents the rationale for the change and why a new 510(k) is not required. However, the FDA may review such letters to file to evaluate the regulatory status of the modified product at any time and may require the manufacturer to cease marketing and recall the modified device until 510(k) clearance or PMA approval is obtained. The manufacturer may also be subject to significant regulatory fines or penalties.

#### ***De novo Classification Process***

If a previously unclassified new medical device does not qualify for the 510(k) pre-market notification process because no predicate device to which it is substantially equivalent can be identified, the device is automatically classified into Class III. The Food and Drug Administration Modernization Act of 1997 established a new route to market for low to moderate risk medical devices that are automatically placed into Class III due to the absence of a predicate device, called the “Request for Evaluation of Automatic Class III Designation,” or the *de novo* classification procedure. This procedure allows a manufacturer whose novel device is automatically classified into Class III to request classification of its medical device into Class I or Class II on the basis that the device presents low or moderate risk, rather than requiring the submission and approval of a PMA. Prior to the enactment of the Food and Drug Administration Safety and Innovation Act, or FDASIA, in July 2012, a medical device could only be eligible for *de novo* classification if the manufacturer first submitted a 510(k) pre-market notification and received a determination from the FDA that the device was not substantially equivalent. FDASIA streamlined the *de novo* classification pathway by permitting manufacturers to request *de novo* classification directly without first submitting a 510(k) pre-market notification to the FDA and receiving a not substantially equivalent determination. Under FDASIA, the FDA was required to classify the device within 120 days following receipt of the *de novo* application. If the manufacturer sought reclassification into Class II, the manufacturer was to include a draft proposal for special controls necessary to provide a reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the medical device. The FDA may reject the reclassification petition if it identifies a legally marketed predicate device that would be appropriate for a 510(k) or determines that the device is not low to moderate risk or that general controls would be inadequate to control the risks and special controls cannot be developed.

FDA granted *de novo* classification for the PoNS device for gait deficit in MS, which resulted in Class II classification. In order to be placed in Class II, the FDA required reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the PoNS device. Under Class II, general controls (e.g., premarket notification) and special controls (e.g., specific performance testing) are applicable.

23

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

Obtaining FDA marketing authorization, *de novo* classification and clearance, or approval for medical devices is expensive and uncertain, generally takes several years, and generally requires detailed and comprehensive scientific and clinical data. Notwithstanding the expense, these efforts may never result in FDA authorization for commercial distribution. Even if we were to obtain regulatory authorization, it may not be for the uses we believe are important or commercially attractive, in which case we would not be permitted to market our product for those uses.

#### ***Clinical Trials***

Clinical trials are typically required to support a PMA and are sometimes required to support a 510(k) or *de novo* submission. All clinical investigations of devices to determine safety and effectiveness must be conducted in accordance with the FDA's investigational device exemption, or IDE, regulations which govern investigational device labeling, prohibit promotion of the investigational device, and specify an array of recordkeeping, reporting and monitoring responsibilities of study sponsors and study investigators. If the device presents a “significant risk,” as defined by the FDA, to human health, the FDA requires the device sponsor to submit an IDE application to the FDA, which must

24

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

become effective prior to commencing human clinical trials. A significant risk device is one that presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety or welfare of a patient and either is implanted, used in supporting or sustaining human life, substantially important in diagnosing, curing, mitigating or treating disease or otherwise preventing impairment of human health, or otherwise presents a potential for serious risk to a subject. An IDE application must be supported by appropriate data, such as animal and laboratory test results, showing that it is safe to test the device in humans and that the testing protocol is scientifically sound. The IDE will automatically become effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA unless the FDA notifies the company that the investigation may not begin. If the FDA determines that there are deficiencies or other concerns with an IDE for which it requires modification, the FDA may permit a clinical trial to proceed under a conditional approval. If the device is considered a "non-significant" risk, IDE submission to FDA is not required. Instead, only approval from the Institutional Review Board, or IRB, overseeing the investigation at each clinical trial site is required.

The IRB is responsible for the initial and continuing review of the IDE, and may pose additional requirements for the conduct of the study. If an IDE application is approved by the FDA and one or more IRBs, human clinical trials may begin at a specific number of investigational sites with a specific number of patients, as approved by the FDA. If the device presents a non-significant risk to the patient, a sponsor may begin the clinical trial after obtaining approval for the trial by one or more IRBs without separate approval from the FDA, but must still follow abbreviated IDE requirements, such as monitoring the investigation, ensuring that the investigators obtain informed consent, and labeling and record-keeping requirements. Acceptance of an IDE application for review does not guarantee that the FDA will allow the IDE to become effective and, if it does become effective, the FDA may or may not determine that the data derived from the trials support the safety and effectiveness of the device or warrant the continuation of clinical trials. An IDE supplement must be submitted to, and approved by, the FDA before a sponsor or investigator may make a change to the investigational plan that may affect its scientific soundness, study plan or the rights, safety or welfare of human subjects.

During a study, the sponsor is required to comply with the applicable FDA requirements, including, for example, trial monitoring, selecting clinical investigators and providing them with the investigational plan, ensuring IRB review, adverse event reporting, record keeping and prohibitions on the promotion of investigational devices or on making safety or effectiveness claims for them. The clinical investigators in the clinical study are also subject to FDA's regulations and must obtain patient informed consent, rigorously follow the investigational plan and study protocol, control the disposition of the investigational device, and comply with all reporting and record keeping requirements.

Additionally, after a trial begins, the sponsor, the FDA or the IRB could suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time for various reasons, including a belief that the risks to study subjects outweigh the anticipated benefits. Even if a clinical trial is completed, there can be no assurance that the data generated during a clinical study will meet the safety and effectiveness endpoints or otherwise produce results that will lead the FDA to grant marketing clearance or approval.

24

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### ***Pervasive and Continuing U.S. Food and Drug Administration and Healthcare Regulation***

After a device is cleared or approved for marketing, numerous and pervasive regulatory requirements continue to apply. These include:

- establishment, registration and device listing with the FDA;
- QSR requirements, which require manufacturers, including third-party manufacturers, to follow stringent design, testing, control, documentation and other quality assurance procedures during all aspects of the design and manufacturing process;
- labeling regulations and FDA prohibitions against the promotion of investigational products, or "off-label" uses of cleared or approved products;
- requirements related to promotional activities;
- clearance or approval of product modifications to 510(k)-cleared devices that could significantly affect safety or effectiveness or that would constitute a major change in intended use of one of our cleared devices;
- medical device reporting regulations, which require that a manufacturer report to the FDA if a device it markets may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury, or has malfunctioned and the device or a similar

25

---

[Table of Contents](#)

device that it markets would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury, if the malfunction were to recur;

- correction, removal and recall reporting regulations, which require that manufacturers report to the FDA field corrections and product recalls or removals if undertaken to reduce a risk to health posed by the device or to remedy a violation of the FDCA that may present a risk to health;
- the FDA's recall authority, whereby the agency can order device manufacturers to recall from the market a product that is in violation of governing laws and regulations; and
- post-market surveillance activities and regulations, which apply when deemed by the FDA to be necessary to protect the public health or to provide additional safety and effectiveness data for the device.

Advertising and promotion of medical devices, in addition to being regulated by the FDA, are also regulated by the FTC and by state regulatory and enforcement authorities. Recently, promotional activities for FDA-regulated products of other companies have been the subject of enforcement action brought under healthcare reimbursement laws and consumer protection statutes. In addition, under the federal Lanham Act and similar state laws, competitors and others can initiate litigation relating to advertising claims. If the FDA determines that promotional materials or training constitutes promotion of an unapproved or uncleared use, it could request that modification of promotional materials or subject a company to regulatory or enforcement actions. It is also possible that other federal, state or foreign enforcement authorities might take action if they consider promotional or training materials to constitute promotion of an unapproved or uncleared use, which could result in significant fines or penalties under other statutory authorities, such as laws prohibiting false claims for reimbursement.

Healthcare providers, physicians, and third party payers play a primary role in the recommendation and use of our current products and **will do** **so** for any future products **for which payment is available under any federal health care program**, **we commercialize**. Arrangements with third party payers, healthcare providers and physicians expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations that may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we market, sell and distribute products. In the **U.S.**, **our activities** **United States**, **we are potentially subject to regulation by various federal state and local authorities in addition to the FDA**, including the CMS, other divisions of the United States Department of Health and Human Services (e.g., the Office of Inspector General), the United States Department of Justice and individual United States Attorney offices within the Department of Justice, and state anti-fraud and local governments. The applicable abuse laws, and regulations include including, without limitation, the federal health care programs program Anti-Kickback Statute, or AKS, the federal civil False Claims Act, and the health care fraud provisions of the federal Civil False Claims Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act.

The **AKS** Anti-Kickback Statute makes it illegal for any person, including a device manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf), to knowingly and willfully solicit, receive, offer or pay any remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, that is intended to induce or reward referrals, including the purchase, recommendation, lease, or order of, or arranging for or recommending, any good or service, including a particular device, for which payment

---

[Table of Contents](#)

may be made under a federal healthcare program, such as Medicare or Medicaid. The term "remuneration" expressly includes kickbacks, bribes, or rebates and also has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. There are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain business arrangements from prosecution under the Anti-Kickback Statute, however, those exceptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and there may be no available exception or safe harbor for many common business activities, such as reimbursement support programs, educational and research grants, or charitable donations. Practices that involve remuneration to those who prescribe, purchase, or recommend medical devices, including discounts, providing items or services for free or engaging such individuals as consultants, advisors, or speakers, may be subject to scrutiny if they do not fit squarely within an exception or safe harbor and would be subject to a facts and circumstances analysis to determine compliance with the Anti-Kickback Statute. Violations of this law are punishable by

up to ten years in prison, criminal fines, administrative civil money penalties, damages, disgorgement and exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs. In addition, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. Various states have adopted laws similar to the Anti-Kickback Statute, and some of these state laws may be broader in scope in that some of these state laws extend to all payors and may not contain safe harbors.

The Federal Civil False Claims Act imposes civil penalties, including through civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities (including manufacturers) for, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, false or fraudulent claims for payment of government funds or making knowingly presenting or causing to be presented a false statement or record material to payment of a false claim or knowingly and improperly avoiding, decreasing or concealing an obligation to pay money to the federal government. Penalties for a False Claims Act

[Table of Contents](#)

violation include three times the actual damages sustained by the government, plus significant mandatory civil penalties for each separate false claim and the potential for exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs. The government may deem manufacturers to have "caused" the submission of false or fraudulent claims by, for example, providing inaccurate billing or coding information to customers or promoting a product off-label. Claims which include items or services resulting from a violation of the federal AKS Anti-Kickback Statute also are deemed false or fraudulent claims for purposes of the False Claims Act. Our future marketing and activities relating to the reporting of wholesaler or estimated retail prices for our products and other information affecting federal, state and third-party reimbursement for our products, and the sale and marketing of our product and any future product candidates, are subject to scrutiny under this law. Conduct that violates the False Claims Act also may implicate various federal criminal statutes. Various states have adopted laws similar to the False Claims Act, and many of these state laws are broader in scope and apply to all payors, and therefore, are not limited to only those claims submitted to the federal government.

The federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act ("HIPAA") imposes criminal liability for, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payers, or knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Similar to the federal healthcare Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation.

The federal Physician Payment Sunshine Act, implemented as the Open Payments Program, requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services information related to payments and other transfers of value, directly or indirectly, to physicians, physician assistants, nurse practitioners, clinical nurse specialists, certified nurse anesthetists, and certified nurse midwives, and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members.

The manufacturing processes associated with medical devices are required to comply with the applicable portions of the QSR, which cover the methods and the facilities and controls for the design, manufacture, testing, production, processes, controls, quality assurance, labeling, packaging, distribution, installation and servicing of finished devices intended for human use. The QSR also requires, among other things, maintenance of a device master file, design history file, device history records, and complaint files. As a manufacturer, we are subject to periodic scheduled or unscheduled inspections by the FDA. Any failure to maintain compliance with the QSR requirements could result in the shut-down of, or restrictions on, manufacturing operations and the recall or seizure of products, which would have a material adverse effect on our business. The discovery of previously unknown problems with any of our products, including unanticipated adverse events or adverse events of increasing severity or frequency, whether resulting from the use of the device within the scope of its clearance or off-label by a physician in the practice of medicine, could result in restrictions on the device, including the removal of the product from the market or voluntary or mandatory device recalls.

The FDA has broad regulatory compliance and enforcement powers. If the FDA determines that a company has failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can take a variety of compliance or enforcement actions, which may result in any of the following

sanctions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- unanticipated expenditures to address or defend such actions
- customer notifications for repair, replacement, refunds;
- recall, detention or seizure of our products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying our requests for 510(k) clearance or PMA approval of new products or modified products;
- operating restrictions;
- withdrawing 510(k) clearances or PMA approvals that have already been granted;

#### [Table of Contents](#)

- refusal to grant export approval for our products; or
- criminal prosecution.

#### **26 U.S. Healthcare Reform**

---

Table in the United States, there has been significant interest in implementing cost-containment programs to limit the growth of government-paid healthcare costs, including price controls and restrictions on reimbursement. Because private payers often follow Medicare and Medicaid coverage policy and payment limitations in setting their own reimbursement rates, any reduction in reimbursement that results from federal legislation or regulation may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payers. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of our due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations, and additional legislative and regulatory measures.

Such legislative changes in the United States include the Affordable Care Act (ACA), which intended to broaden access to health insurance, reduced or constrained the growth of healthcare spending, enhanced remedies against healthcare fraud and abuse, added new transparency requirements for healthcare and health insurance industries, and imposed additional health policy reforms. We expect that additional federal, state, and foreign healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal, state, and foreign governments will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in limited coverage and reimbursement of, reduced demand for, or additional pricing pressures on our products.

#### **Health Canada**

After a medical device has been approved for commercial use in Canada, there are a number of Health Canada requirements that must be adhered to including but not limited to the following:

- annual license renewals;
- labeling regulations, which prohibit "misbranded" devices from entering the market, as well as prohibit on the promotion of products for unapproved or "off-label" use and impose other restrictions on labeling including truthfulness and accuracy;
- assessment of product modifications for significant changes that would require license amendments;
- post-market surveillance including medical device reporting, which requires manufacturers report to Health Canada if their device may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury, or malfunctioned in a way that would likely cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if it were to recur; and
- other post-approval restrictions or conditions.

#### **European Union**

We submitted an application for a CE Mark certification of the PoNS device with our UK based notified body in December 2018. In August 2019, we withdrew our application from the EU marketing CE certification conformity process procedure due to notified body activities being

delayed by Brexit and the upcoming medical devices regulation changes. We have engaged G-MED NA as our ~~registrar~~ notified body and will reconsider submitting to the EU when conditions stabilize. The successful completion of this review would result in ~~marketing authorization for the sale~~ CE certification of the PoNS device in the EU, which now excludes the UK. Some EU member states have additional notification requirements that we expect to satisfy before we launch our PoNS Therapy in those member states. Once the PoNS device is placed into the EU market, post market requirements apply including but not limited to:

- ensuring that the labeling promotes only ~~approved~~ intended use(s) of the ~~device~~ device which have been certified;
- assessment of product modifications for significant changes may require license amendments;

[Table of Contents](#)

- post-market surveillance including vigilance reporting, which requires manufacturers report to authorities if our PoNS device caused or contributed to a death or serious injury, or malfunctioned in a way that would likely cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if it were to recur; and
- other post-approval restrictions or conditions.

**Australia**

We submitted our application for marketing authorization to the TGA during the third quarter of 2019. We supplemented our submission with additional data based on questions supplied to date and provided responses to additional questions during the third quarter of 2020. In November 2021, we received market authorization from the TGA for the sale of PONS as a ~~Class~~ class IIa medical device. In Australia, PoNS is indicated for short term use by healthcare professionals as an adjunct to a therapeutic exercise program to improve balance and gait. PoNS is not intended to be used alone without an exercise program.

**Data Privacy and Security Laws; Breaches**

Medical device companies may be subject to U.S. federal and state health information privacy, security and data breach notification laws, which may govern the collection, use, disclosure and protection of health-related and other personal information. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, imposes privacy, security and breach reporting obligations with respect to individually identifiable health information upon "covered entities" (health plans, health care clearinghouses and certain health care providers), and their respective business associates, individuals or entities that create, ~~received~~, receive, maintain or transmit protected health information in connection with providing a service for or on behalf of a covered entity. HIPAA mandates the reporting of certain breaches of health information to the U.S.

[Table of Contents](#)

Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, affected individuals and if the breach is large enough, the media. Entities that are found to be in violation of HIPAA as the result of a breach of unsecured protected health information, or PHI, a complaint about privacy practices or an audit by HHS, may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative fines and penalties and/or additional reporting and oversight obligations if required to enter into a resolution agreement and corrective action plan with HHS to settle allegations of HIPAA non-compliance. Even when HIPAA does not apply, according to the FTC, failing to take appropriate steps to keep consumers' personal information secure constitutes unfair acts or practices in or affecting commerce in violation of Section 5(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C § 45(a). The FTC expects a company's data security measures to be reasonable and appropriate in light of the sensitivity and volume of consumer information it holds, the size and complexity of its business, and the cost of available tools to improve security and reduce vulnerabilities.

Personally identifiable health information is considered sensitive data that merits stronger safeguards. The FTC's guidance for appropriately securing consumers' personal information is similar to what is required by the HIPAA Security Rule. With respect to privacy, the FTC also sets expectations that companies honor the privacy promises made to individuals about how the company handles consumers' personal information; any failure to honor promises, such as the statements made in a privacy policy or on a website, may also constitute unfair or deceptive acts or practices in violation of the FTC Act. The FTC has the power to enforce promises as it interprets them, and events that we cannot fully control, such as data breaches, may be result in FTC enforcement. Enforcement by the FTC under the FTC Act can result in civil penalties or enforcement actions.

In addition, certain state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, some of which may be more stringent, broader in scope or offer greater individual rights with respect to PHI, than HIPAA, and many of which differ from each other, thus complicating compliance efforts. Failure to comply with these laws, where applicable, can result in the imposition of significant civil and/or criminal penalties and private litigation. For example, California enacted the California Consumer Privacy Act, ~~or as amended by the CCPA, on June 28, 2018, California Privacy Rights Act ("CCPA") which took effect on January 1, 2020. The CCPA gives California residents expanded rights to access and delete their personal information, opt out of certain personal information sharing, and receive detailed information about how their personal information is used. The CCPA provides for civil penalties for violations, as well as a private right of action for certain data breaches that is expected to increase data breach litigation. Additionally, many of the amendments introduced by the more ambiguous provisions of CPRA went effect on January 1, 2023, and new implementing regulations continue to be introduced by the California Privacy Protection Agency, a dedicated California privacy regulator. Failure to comply with the CCPA have yet to be fully interpreted may result in, among other things, significant civil penalties and applied, and numerous amendments have been proposed and are working their way through legislature. Consequently, the CCPA currently presents many compliance questions that remain unresolved. The CCPA may increase our compliance costs and potential liability, injunctive relief, or statutory or actual damages.~~ In addition to the CCPA, numerous other states' legislatures are

#### [Table of Contents](#)

considering similar laws that will require ongoing compliance efforts and investment. For example, Virginia, Colorado, Utah, Indiana, Iowa, Tennessee, Montana, Texas, and Connecticut have enacted privacy laws similar to the CCPA that impose new obligations or limitations in areas affecting our business and we continue to assess the impact of these state legislation, on our business as additional information and guidance becomes available.

In the European Union, ~~as of May 25, 2018, Regulation 2016/679, known as the General Data Protection Regulation, or GDPR, replaced the Data Protection Directive with respect to the processing of personal data including as implemented in the European Union. The GDPR (UK collectively "GDPR")~~, imposes many requirements for controllers and processors of personal data, including, for example, higher standards for obtaining consent from individuals to process their personal data, more robust disclosures to individuals and a strengthened individual data rights regime, shortened timelines for data breach notifications, limitations on retention and secondary use of information, increased requirements pertaining to health data and pseudonymized (i.e., key-coded) data and additional obligations when we contract third-party processors in connection with the processing of the personal data. The GDPR allows EU member states to make additional laws and regulations further limiting the processing of genetic, biometric or health data. Failure to comply with the requirements of GDPR and the applicable national data protection laws of the EU member states may result in fines for the most serious breaches of up to €20 million or up to 4% of the total worldwide annual turnover of the preceding financial year, whichever is higher, and other administrative penalties.

With regard to transfer of personal data, the GDPR restricts the ability of companies to transfer personal data from the EU to the U.S. and other countries, which may adversely affect our ability to transfer personal data or otherwise may cause us to incur significant compliance costs for implementing lawful transfer mechanisms, conducting data transfer impact assessments, and implementing additional measures where necessary to ensure that personal data transferred are adequately protected in a manner essentially equivalent to the EU. The GDPR provides different transfer mechanisms we can use to lawfully transfer personal data from the EU to countries outside the EU. An example is relying on adequacy decisions of the European Commission, such as the EU-U.S. Data Privacy Framework. In July 2023, the European Commission adopted its adequacy decision for the EU-U.S. Data Privacy Framework. The adequacy decision concludes that the U.S. ensures an adequate level of protection (compared to that of the EU) for personal data transferred from the EU to U.S. companies participating in the EU-U.S. Data Privacy Framework. The adequacy decisions of the European Commission are subject to periodic reviews and may be amended or withdrawn.

Another example of a lawful transfer mechanism is using the EU Standard Contractual Clauses as approved by the European Commission in June 2021. In order to use the EU Standard Contractual Clauses mechanism, the exporter and the importer must ensure that the importer may guarantee a level of personal data protection in the importing country's level of protection must be adequate that is essentially equivalent to that of the EEA. Compliance with EU data transfer obligations involves conducting transfer impact assessments, which includes documenting detailed analyses of data access and protection laws in the countries in which data importers are located, which can be costly and time-consuming. Data importers must also expend resources in analyzing their ability to comply with transfer obligations, including implementing new safeguards and controls to further protect personal data. A lack of valid transfer mechanisms for GDPR-covered data could increase exposure to enforcement actions and may affect our business operations and require commercial cost (including potentially limiting our ability to collaborate/work with certain third parties and/or requiring an increase in our data processing capabilities in the EU/UK). Further, the European/UK data protection laws (including laws on data transfers) may also be updated/revised, accompanied by new guidance and/or judicial/regulatory interpretations, which could entail further impacts on our compliance efforts and increased cost.

Additionally, other countries outside of Europe/UK have enacted or are considering enacting similar cross-border data transfer restrictions and laws requiring local data residency, which could increase the cost and complexity of delivering our services and operating our business. The type of challenges we face in Europe/UK will likely also arise in other jurisdictions that adopt laws similar in construction to the GDPR or regulatory frameworks of equivalent complexity.

#### **Our Corporate History Highlights**

##### ***Formation and Reincorporation***

We were originally incorporated in British Columbia, Canada on March 13, 2014 under the British Columbia Business Corporations Act, or the BCBCA, as "0996445 B.C. Ltd." On March 25, 2014, and amended on April 8, 2014, we entered into an arrangement agreement with Boomerang Oil, Inc. (formerly known as 0922327 B.C. Ltd.) and 0995162

30

---

##### [\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

B.C. Ltd. to reorganize the business structure of such three entities in such a manner which would allow Boomerang Oil, Inc. to spin us out to become an independent entity that is a reporting issuer in Canada and for us to complete a reverse take-over of 0995162 B.C. Ltd.

On May 23, 2014, we changed our name to "Helius Medical Technologies, Inc." and filed articles of continuation with the Wyoming Secretary of State office to reincorporate from being a corporation governed by the BCBCA to a corporation governed by the Wyoming Business Corporation Act. On July 20, 2018, we reincorporated from the state of Wyoming to the state of Delaware.

28

---

##### [\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

#### ***Acquisitions***

On June 13, 2014, we acquired NeuroHabilitation Corporation ("NHC") and on December 21, 2018, NHC changed its name to Helius Medical, Inc. HMI is our operating subsidiary in the United States.

On October 30, 2019, we acquired Heuro, Canada, Inc. ("Heuro"), a company incorporated under the federal laws of Canada. Heuro is an indirect wholly owned subsidiary of HMC, a company incorporated under the federal laws of Canada. HMC is our operating subsidiary in Canada.

## **Corporate Information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 642 Newtown Yardley Road, Suite 100, Newtown, PA 18940 and our telephone number is 215-944-6100. We maintain a corporate website [website at www.heliusmedical.com](http://www.heliusmedical.com). We make available free of charge through our Internet website our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and current reports on Form 8-K, and any amendments to these reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish such material to the SEC. We are not including the information on our website as a part of, nor incorporating it by reference into this Form 10-K. Additionally, the SEC maintains a website that contains annual, quarterly, and current reports, proxy statements, and other information that issuers (including us) file electronically with the SEC. The SEC's website address is <http://www.sec.gov>.

## **Human Capital Resources**

As a neurotechnology company focused on neurological wellness through the development, licensing or acquisition of non-implantable technologies targeted at reducing symptoms of neurological disease or trauma, our human capital is important to the long-term success of our company.

### ***Our People***

We believe our diverse workforce is comprised of engaged individuals with appropriate qualifications and competencies to support our growth. Our senior management team has an average of over 25 years of experience in the health sciences industry with recognized leadership expertise in their functional areas.

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we had 26 22 full-time employees, of which 24 20 are located in the United States and two 2 are located in Canada. None of our employees were covered by collective bargaining agreements. We have not experienced any interruptions of operations due to disputes with our employees.

### ***Talent Acquisition, Development and Retention***

Hiring, developing, and retaining high-performing employees is important to our operations and we are focused on creating experiences that foster growth, performance and retention. Retaining and acquiring the right talent in this competitive environment, particularly at speed and scale, will continue to be a priority as we have obtained FDA de novo classification and clearance of the PoNS device. priority. Our workforce reflects talent from diverse perspectives.

31

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### ***Compensation, Benefits, Safety and Wellness***

In addition to offering market competitive salaries and wages, we offer comprehensive health benefits to eligible employees.

29 32

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS**

*An investment in our securities has a high degree of risk. Before you invest you should carefully consider the risks and uncertainties described below and the other information in this Form 10-K. Any of the risks and uncertainties set forth herein could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition, which in turn could materially and adversely affect the trading price or value of our securities. Additional risks not currently known to us or which we consider immaterial based on information currently available to us may also materially adversely affect us. As a result, you could lose all or part of your investment.*

#### Risks Related to Our Financial Position and Need for Capital

*We have incurred substantial net losses since our inception and anticipate that we will continue to incur substantial net losses for the foreseeable future. We may never achieve or sustain profitability.*

We have incurred substantial net losses since our inception. For the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, we incurred a net loss of \$14.1 million \$8.9 million and \$18.1 million \$14.1 million, respectively, and used cash in operating activities of \$14.3 million \$10.4 million and \$13.4 million \$14.3 million, respectively. We have an accumulated deficit of \$151.1 million \$160.0 million as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023. Our losses have resulted primarily from costs incurred in connection with our design, manufacturing and development activities, research and development activities, building our commercial infrastructure, stock-based compensation, legal, advertising, marketing and investor relations, and general and administrative expenses associated with our operations. Although we have received a medical device license from Health Canada to market the PoNS device in Canada, marketing authorization from the FDA for the sale of our PoNS device in the U.S. and market authorization from the TGA in Australia, we expect to continue to incur substantial losses for the foreseeable future as we continue to research and develop and seek regulatory marketing authorization for expand our product candidate, commercialization efforts.

*We will require additional financing to carry out our plan of operations and if we are unable to obtain such financing, our business may fail.*

During the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we generated approximately \$0.8 million \$0.6 million in revenue from the commercial sales of products in the United States and Canada. Because we have generated limited revenues from commercialization, our operations to date have been principally financed through public and private offerings of our common stocks, warrants and convertible debt and exercises of options and warrants. There are a number of conditions that we must satisfy before we will be able to generate sufficient revenue to fund our operations, including but not limited to the recruitment of patients for treatment, and demonstration of effectiveness sufficient to generate commercial orders by customers for our product.

These factors raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern through at least 12 months from the date of this Form 10-K. While we had \$14.5 million \$5.2 million of cash as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we do not currently have sufficient resources to accomplish all of the above conditions necessary for us to generate sufficient revenues to achieve profitability, and we will require additional financing to fund our operations beyond 2023, the second quarter of 2024. There is no guarantee that such funding will be available at all or in sufficient amounts to satisfy our required expenditures.

If we are unable to obtain additional financing as needed, we may be forced to reduce the scope of our operations and planned capital expenditures or sell certain assets, including intellectual property, and we may be forced to cease or wind down operations, seek protection under the provisions of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code, or liquidate and dissolve our company, which would have a material adverse effect on the value of our common stock.

*Raising additional capital by issuing securities or through debt financings or licensing arrangements may cause significant dilution to our existing stockholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or product on terms unfavorable to us.*

Our operations to date have principally been financed by public and private offerings of our common stock warrants and convertible debt and exercises of warrants and options. In August 2022, we raised \$18.0 million in gross proceeds from an equity financing. Until we can generate significant revenue from product sales, if ever, we expect to finance our

operations through the sale of equity, debt financings, or other capital sources, including

[Table of Contents](#)

potential collaborations with other companies or other strategic transactions. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of such securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a stockholder. Debt financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take certain actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through strategic partnerships with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies or product, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates, or otherwise grant licenses on terms that are not favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional capital when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or commercialization efforts, **for our product or our product candidates**, or grant rights to develop and market potential future product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves. Any of these events could adversely affect our ability to achieve our product development and commercialization goals and have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our independent registered public accounting firm has included an explanatory paragraph relating to our ability to continue as a going concern in its report on our audited financial statements. We may be unable to continue to operate without the threat of liquidation for the foreseeable future.***

In connection with our management's assessment, our report from our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023** includes an explanatory paragraph stating that our recurring losses from operations and net capital deficiency raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. If we are unable to obtain sufficient funding, our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations will be materially and adversely affected and we may be unable to continue as a going concern. Future reports from our independent registered public accounting firm may also contain statements expressing substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. We believe our existing capital resources will be sufficient to fund our operations through **2023, the second quarter of 2024**. We also expect our expenses to increase as we **continue to** conduct trials of PoNS **Therapy, such as the PoNSTEP, or, if Therapy®** and as we **decide to** pursue further regulatory approvals, **or and** maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio. There can be no assurance that we will be successful in raising additional capital or that such capital, if available, will be on terms that are acceptable to us. If we are unable to continue as a going concern, we may have to liquidate our assets and may receive less than the value at which those assets are carried on our consolidated financial statements, and investors will likely lose all or a part of their investment. If we seek additional financing to fund our business activities in the future and there remains substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern, investors or other financing sources may be unwilling to provide additional funding on commercially reasonable terms or at all.

***Global macroeconomic instability could adversely affect our ability to raise additional financing.***

Generally, global macroeconomic conditions remain uncertain, largely due to the effects of geopolitical conflicts in the Ukraine and in the Middle East, disruptions in the banking system and financial markets, increased inflation and sustained high interest rates. The general economic and capital market conditions, both in the U.S. and worldwide, have been volatile in the past and at times have adversely affected the Company's access to capital and increased the cost of capital. The capital and credit markets may not be available to support future capital raising activity on favorable terms. If economic conditions decline, the Company's future cost of equity or debt capital and access to the capital markets could be adversely affected.

**Risks Related to the Development and Commercialization of our Product**

***We currently only have one product which is approved in the U.S. only for treatment of gait deficit, for MS and otherwise only in Canada and Australia.***

We currently have no products authorized CE certified and CE marked for commercial distribution in Europe, or in any other country outside of Canada, the U.S. and Australia. In the U.S. we have not received marketing authorization for use of the PoNS device other than for MS. In addition, the FDA has previously rejected our de novo application for marketing authorization of the PoNS device for mmTBI. In respect of Europe, we are developing the PoNS device for use in the

34

---

[Table of Contents](#)

neuromodulation market, but we cannot begin marketing and selling the device in Europe until we obtain applicable authorizations CE certificate of conformity from a notified body in the European Union (Notified Body) EU after successful completion of a conformity assessment procedure. The process of obtaining regulatory authorization and/or certification is expensive and time-consuming and can vary substantially based upon, among other things, the type, complexity and novelty of a product. Changes in regulatory policy, changes in or the enactment of additional statutes or regulations, or changes in regulatory review for each submitted product application may cause delays in the authorization and/or certification of a product or rejection of a regulatory application altogether.

We plan to develop are developing the PoNS device for other indications, or symptoms caused by neurological disorders, and will be required to commit our own resources to fund development of any other indications and each would require separate regulatory clearance, certification or other marketing authorization in other territories. The costs of such development efforts and

31

---

[Table of Contents](#)

regulatory clearance, certification or other marketing authorization could be substantial and would likely require additional funding, and each such indication would be subject to the same foregoing risks and uncertainties for FDA clearance/authorization.

***Worldwide economic Obtaining FDA marketing authorization is expensive and social instability could adversely affect uncertain, generally takes several years, and generally requires detailed and comprehensive scientific and clinical data. Notwithstanding the expense, these efforts may never result in FDA authorization for commercial distribution. Even if we were to obtain regulatory authorization, it may not be for the uses we believe are important or commercially attractive, in which case we would not be permitted to market our revenue, financial condition, or results of operations.***

The health of the global economy, and the credit markets and the financial services industry in particular, as well as the stability of the social fabric of our society, affects our business and operating results. For example, the credit and financial markets may be adversely affected by the current conflict between Russia and Ukraine and measures taken in response thereto. If the credit markets are not favorable, we may be unable to raise additional financing when needed or on favorable terms. Our customers may experience financial difficulties or be unable to borrow money to fund their operations, which may adversely impact their ability to purchase our products or to pay product for our products on a timely basis, if at all. In addition, adverse economic conditions, such as recent supply chain disruptions and labor shortages and persistent inflation, have impacted, and may continue to adversely impact our suppliers' ability to provide our manufacturer with materials and components, which may negatively impact our business. These economic conditions make it more difficult for us to accurately forecast and plan our future business activities.

***Worldwide economic and social instability could adversely affect our revenue, financial condition, or results of operations.***

The health of the global economy, and the credit markets and the financial services industry in particular, as well as the stability of the social fabric of our society, affects our business and operating results. For example, the credit and financial markets may be adversely affected by the

current conflict between Russia and Ukraine and measures taken in response thereto. If the credit markets are not favorable, we may be unable to raise additional financing when needed or on favorable terms. Our customers may experience financial difficulties or be unable to borrow money to fund their operations, which may adversely impact their ability to purchase our products or to pay for our products on a timely basis, if at all. In addition, adverse economic conditions, such as recent supply chain disruptions and labor shortages and persistent inflation, have impacted, and may continue to adversely impact our suppliers' ability to provide our manufacturer with materials and components, which may negatively impact our business. These economic conditions make it more difficult for us to accurately forecast and plan our future business activities. those uses.

*Our PoNS technology is a novel form of neurostimulation therapy, and the medical community tends not to adopt new therapies very rapidly. If physicians elect not to prescribe the PoNS Therapy, or if we cannot train physical therapists in the supervision of the use of the PoNS Therapy, we will be unable to generate significant revenue, if any. revenue.*

Our continued deployment strategy depends on physicians prescribing the PoNS Therapy to patients with relevant neurological disorders and physical therapists being trained in the supervision of patients' use of our treatment. Novel technologies are usually more slowly adopted by the medical community, as the medical community tends to be very conservative. Physicians may elect not to use our products for a variety of reasons, including:

- lack or perceived lack of evidence supporting the beneficial characteristics of our technology;
- limited long-term data on the use of PoNS technology for therapy;
- physicians' perception that there are insufficient advantages of our product relative to currently available products or compared to supervised therapeutic exercise alone;
- our inability to effectively train physical therapists in the supervision of patients' use of the therapy; PoNS Therapy;
- our ability to develop our commercial infrastructure to successfully launch;
- hospitals may choose not to purchase our product;
- group purchasing organizations may choose not to contract for our product, thus limiting availability of our products to hospital purchasers;
- lack of coverage or adequate payment from managed care plans and other third-party payers for our product;
- Medicare, Medicaid or other third-party payers may limit or not permit reimbursement for our product; and

32

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- the development or improvement of competitive products.

If the medical community is slow to adopt, or declines to adopt our PoNS device for neurostimulation therapy, we will not be able to generate significant revenues if any, which would have a material adverse effect on our business.

*There is limited market awareness of our product, and the neuromodulation market is new and uncertain.*

There is currently limited market awareness of our product. In order to succeed, we must, among other things, increase market awareness of our PoNS Therapy and expand our sales and marketing strategy. If we fail in any of these endeavors or experience delays in pursuing them, we will not generate revenues as planned and will need to curtail operations or seek additional financing earlier than otherwise anticipated. In addition, if the neuromodulation market

35

---

[Table of Contents](#)

fails to become more integrated in neurological therapy, it could have a materially adverse effect on our business and financial position.

***We face significant competition in an environment of rapid technological change, and our competitors may develop devices or products that are more advanced or more effective than ours are which may adversely affect our financial condition and our ability to successfully market the PoNS device.***

The neurostimulation market involves rapidly developing technology. Our competitors in the industry are predominantly large companies with longer operating histories, with significantly easier access to capital and other resources and an established product pipeline than us. The combined clinical research and product development done by the industry, including by us and all of our competitors, is foundational, and neurostimulation has slowly become integrated into neurological therapy. This foundation has allowed new and innovative neurostimulation companies to enter the market. New developments occur rapidly, and we anticipate that we will face increasing competition as new companies enter our market.

There can be no assurance that we will be able to establish ourselves in the neurostimulation market, or, if established, that we will be able to maintain our market position, if any position. Our commercial opportunity may be reduced if our competitors develop new or improved products that are more convenient, more effective or less expensive than our product candidate is. Competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory marketing authorization for their products more rapidly or earlier than we may obtain marketing authorization for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. Additionally, technologies developed by our competitors may render the PoNS device uneconomical or obsolete.

#### **Risks Related to our Reliance on Third Parties**

***We are, and will continue to be, dependent in significant part on outside scientists and third-party research institutions for our research and development in order to be able to commercialize our product.***

We currently have a limited number of employees and resources available to perform the research and development necessary to commercialize our PoNS Therapy and potential future product candidates. We therefore rely, and will continue to rely, on third-party research institutions, collaborators and consultants for this capability. Such third-party research institutions, collaborators and consultants may determine to cease providing services to us at any time, which would delay our product development and commercialization efforts.

***We depend on third parties for the manufacture and distribution of our product and the loss of our third-party manufacturer and distributor could harm our business.***

We depend on our third-party contract manufacturing partner to manufacture and supply our PoNS device for clinical and commercial purposes, and this contract manufacturer manufactured the units for our engineering and device verification testing and is building the launch quantities for commercialization purposes. Additionally, we depend on a different third-party distribution partner to warehouse and ship our products to customers. Our reliance on a third-party manufacturer and a distribution provider to supply us with our PoNS device and to provide such other distribution services exposes us to risks that could delay our sales or result in higher costs or lost product revenues. In addition, our

#### [Table of Contents](#)

manufacturers have experienced and could continue to experience difficulties including, but not limited to, those caused by the COVID-19 pandemic, in securing long-lead time components, achieving volume production, quality control and quality assurance or suffer shortages of qualified personnel, or fail to follow and remain in compliance with the FDA-mandated Quality System Regulations, or QSR, compliance which is required for all medical devices, or fail to document their compliance to QSRs, the QSR, any of which could result in their inability to manufacture sufficient quantities of our commercially available product to meet market demand or lead to significant delays in the availability of materials for our product and/or FDA enforcement actions against them and/or us.

If we are unable to obtain adequate supplies of our product that meet our specifications and quality standards, it will be difficult for us to compete effectively. While we have supply and quality agreements in place with our manufacturer, they may change the terms of our future

orders or choose not to supply us with products in the future. Furthermore, if such our manufacturer fails to perform its obligations, we may be forced to purchase our product from other third-party manufacturers, which we may not be able to do on reasonable terms or in sufficient time, if at all. In addition, if we are required to change manufacturers for any reason, we will be required to verify that the new manufacturer maintains facilities and procedures that comply with quality standards and with all applicable regulations and guidelines. The delays associated with the verification of a new manufacturer or the reverification of an existing manufacturer could negatively affect our ability to produce and distribute our product in a timely manner.

In order 36

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

***We are currently in the process of transitioning our manufacturing functions to a new contract manufacturer and any delays in the manufacturing process as a result of this transition could harm our business.***

During the third quarter of 2023, the Company began implementing the transition of the manufacturing of PoNS device controllers and mouthpieces from its third-party contract manufacturing partner, Key Tronic Corporation, to Minnetronix, Inc. The Company expects this transition to be successful, we must expand our product lines beyond fully completed by mid-2024, but it is possible that completing the transition could create delays or disruptions in the manufacturing process, or could affect the performance specifications of our PoNS Therapy device. Any delays or disruptions in the manufacturing of our PoNS device during the completion of this transition could negatively impact our business.

The occurrence of any delay, assurance of quality standards and applicable regulatory requirements and any terms that our new contract manufacturer may require us, could harm our ability to meet the demand for gait deficit due to symptoms from MS or balance deficit due to mmTBI, but we may not be able to do so our products in a timely fashion and at expected costs, or at all.

In order to be successful, we will need to expand our product lines beyond our PoNS Therapy for gait deficit due to symptoms from MS or balance deficit due to mmTBI. To succeed in our commercialization efforts, we must effectively continue product development and testing, obtain regulatory authorizations, and enhance our sales, marketing and market access and reimbursement capabilities. There is no assurance that we will succeed in developing a future product candidate or in bringing any of our current or potential future product candidates to market outside of Canada or the U.S. If we fail in bringing our product candidates to market, or experience delays in doing so, we will not generate revenues as planned and will need to curtail operations or seek additional financing earlier than otherwise anticipated.

The development of additional products is subject to the risks of failure inherent in the development of new, state of the art products, and products based on new technologies. These risks include: (a) delays in product development or manufacturing; (b) unplanned expenditures for product development or manufacturing; (c) failure of new products to have the desired effect or an acceptable accuracy and/or safety profile; (d) emergence of superior or equivalent products; (e) failure by any potential collaborative partners to successfully develop products; and (f) the dependence on third parties for the manufacture, development and sale of our products. Because of these risks, our research and development efforts or those of potential collaborative partners may not result in any commercially viable products. If a significant portion of these development efforts is not successfully completed, or any products are not commercially successful, we are less likely to generate significant revenues, or become profitable. The failure to perform such activities cost-effective manner, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

#### Risks Related to Intellectual Property

***If our intellectual property protection is inadequate, competitors may gain access to our technology and undermine our competitive position.***

We regard our intended and future intellectual property as important to our success, and we intend to rely on patent law to protect our proprietary rights. Despite our precautions, unauthorized third parties may copy certain portions of our devices or products or reverse engineer or obtain and use information that we regard as proprietary. We may seek additional patents in the future. We do not know if any future patent application will be issued with the scope of the claims we seek, if at all or whether any patents we receive will be challenged or invalidated. Thus, we cannot assure you that any intellectual property rights that we may receive can be successfully asserted in the future or that they will

not be invalidated, circumvented or challenged. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect proprietary rights to the same extent, as do the laws of the U.S. Our means of protecting any proprietary rights we may receive in the U.S.

[Table of Contents](#)

or abroad may not be adequate and competitors may independently develop a similar technology. Any failure to protect our proprietary information and any successful intellectual property challenges or infringement proceedings against us could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We may be subject to various litigation claims and legal proceedings, including intellectual property litigation, such as patent infringement claims, which could adversely affect our business.***

We, as well as certain of our directors and officers, may be subject to claims or lawsuits. These lawsuits may result in significant legal fees and expenses and could divert management's time and other resources. If the claims contained in these lawsuits are successfully asserted against us, we could be liable for damages and be required to alter or cease certain of our business practices or product lines. Any of these outcomes could cause our business, financial performance and cash position to be negatively impacted.

Additionally, our commercial success will also depend, in part, on not infringing on the patents or proprietary rights of others. There can be no assurance that the technologies and products used or developed by us will not infringe such rights. If such infringement occurs and we are not able to obtain a license from the relevant third party, we will not be able to continue the development, manufacture, use, or sale of any such infringing technology or product. There can be no assurance that necessary licenses to third-party technology will be available at all or on commercially reasonable terms. In some cases, litigation or other proceedings may be necessary to defend against or assert claims of infringement or to determine the scope and validity of the proprietary rights of third parties. Any potential litigation could result in substantial costs to, and diversion of, our resources and could have a material and adverse impact on us.

An adverse outcome in any such litigation or proceeding could subject us to significant liabilities, require us to cease using the subject technology or require us to license the subject technology from the third party, all of which could have a material adverse effect on our business.

[Table of Contents](#)

***There are risks to our intellectual property based on our international business operations.***

We may face risks to our technology and intellectual property as a result of our conducting business outside of the U.S., including as a result of our strategic arrangement with A&B (and subsequent transfer of assets to CMS and CMS Medical Hong Kong Limited), and particularly in jurisdictions that do not have comparable levels of protection of corporate proprietary information and assets such as intellectual property, trademarks, trade secrets, know-how and customer information and records. While these risks are common to many companies, conducting business in certain foreign jurisdictions, housing technology, data and intellectual property abroad, or licensing technology to joint ventures with foreign partners may have more significant exposure. Pursuant to our agreement with A&B, we transferred ownership of certain of our Asian patents, patent applications, and product support material for the PoNS device from us to A&B and granted to A&B, among other things, an exclusive license to market, promote, distribute and sell the PoNS device solely within specified Asian territories. Subsequently, A&B partnered with other companies in other foreign jurisdictions in connection with the development and manufacturing of the PoNS device, which may expose us to material risks of theft of our proprietary information and other intellectual property, including technical data,

manufacturing processes, data sets or other sensitive information. For example, our product or components may be reverse engineered by other business partners or other parties, which could result in our patents being infringed or our know-how or trade secrets stolen. The risk can be by direct intrusion wherein technology and intellectual property is stolen or compromised through cyber intrusions or physical theft through corporate espionage, including with the assistance of insiders, or via more indirect routes.

#### Risks Related to Government Regulation

**Before we can market and sell our products for additional indications, we will be required to obtain marketing authorization and/or certification from the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities. These authorizations and/or certifications will take significant time and require significant research, development, and clinical study expenditures, and ultimately may not succeed.**

Before we begin to label and market the PoNS Therapy for new uses in the U.S., we are required to obtain marketing authorization via a *de novo* classification and clearance request for our product or approval of pre-market approval

#### [Table of Contents](#)

application from the FDA, unless an exemption from pre-market review applies. **We will also be required to comply with costly and more often time-consuming regulatory requirements by foreign regulatory authorities, including Europe, if we want to sell our products in such regions and countries.** While we have marketing authorization for the PoNS Therapy in the U.S. for use as a **short term** **short-term** treatment of gait deficit due to mild-to-moderate symptoms of MS, and in Canada for sale as a class II, non-implantable, medical device for treatment of gait deficit due to symptoms from MS and balance deficit due to mmTBI in conjunction with supervised therapeutic exercise, and marketing authorization in Australia, we have not received regulatory authorization or approval **in** **for** any other region or country for any indication. The process of obtaining regulatory authorizations or approvals, including completion of the *de novo* classification process, to market a medical device can be costly and time consuming, and we may not be able to successfully obtain pre-market reviews on a timely basis, if at all.

In April 2019, the FDA declined our request for *de novo* classification and clearance for mmTBI, in part due to insufficient clinical evidence regarding effectiveness of the PoNS device for use to improve balance in patients with our product from mmTBI. In reaching its conclusion, the FDA noted that it did not have sufficient information to discern the relative independent contributions of the PoNS device and physical therapy to establish sufficient evidence of effectiveness based on our clinical trials. In October 2019, we had **Following** a pre-submission meeting where with the FDA, provided feedback needed to help complete the design of a new clinical trial intended to address the FDA's request for a trial that demonstrates the benefit of the PoNS Therapy compared to physical therapy alone. In January 2020, we received the FDA's feedback on the minutes from the October 2019 pre-submission meeting. In its feedback, the FDA provided post-meeting notes with specific recommendations regarding the trial design that were not discussed in the October 2019 pre-submission meeting. Based on the receipt of the FDA's final minutes from the pre-submission meeting, we are assessing the feasibility of a clinical program to advance the development of a study aimed to obtain clearance for gait and balance deficits in mmTBI if nondilutive financing to fund the program becomes available.

The FDA has substantial discretion in the *de novo* review process and may refuse to accept any future application(s) or may decide that our data are insufficient to grant the *de novo* request and require additional pre-clinical, clinical, or other studies. In addition, varying interpretations of the data obtained from pre-clinical and clinical testing could delay, limit, or prevent marketing authorization and/or certification from the FDA or other regulatory authorities.

Moreover, in addition to continuing our pursuit of an indication for stroke and mmTBI with the FDA, we are currently considering the development of the PoNS device for other potential indications, including cerebral palsy, Parkinson's disease, baby boomers balance, and neurological wellness, as well as expanding the label of our current indications.

If the FDA requires us to go through a lengthier, more rigorous examination for the PoNS device for any of these indications or any other indications we may pursue, as it has for the PoNS device in the indication for mmTBI, introducing the product could be delayed or canceled, which would cause our launch to be delayed or cancelled. In addition, the FDA may determine that the PoNS device requires the more costly, lengthy and uncertain pre-market approval process. For example, if the FDA disagrees with our determination that the *de novo* classification procedures

---

[Table of Contents](#)

are the appropriate path to obtain marketing authorization for the PoNS device, the FDA may require us to submit a PMA application, which is generally more costly and more burdensome and can take several years from the time the application is submitted to the FDA until an approval is obtained.

***Obtaining and maintaining FDA marketing authorization will be costly, may result in time-consuming delays and will subject us to ongoing compliance costs and regulatory risk for non-compliance.***

Even though we have obtained FDA market clearance for our product as a treatment for MS, obtaining FDA marketing authorization, *de novo* classification and clearance, or PMA approval for medical devices for additional indications can be expensive and uncertain, generally takes from several months to several years, and generally requires detailed and comprehensive scientific and clinical data. Notwithstanding the expense, these efforts may never result in FDA authorization.

The FDA can delay, limit or deny authorization of a device for many reasons, including:

- we may not be able to demonstrate to the FDA's satisfaction that our product candidate is safe and effective for its intended users;

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- the data from our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials may be insufficient to support authorization, where required; and
- the manufacturing process or facilities we use may not meet applicable requirements.

In addition, the FDA may change its authorization policies, adopt additional regulations or revise existing regulations, or take other actions, which may prevent or delay marketing authorization of our products under development. Any delay in, or failure to receive or maintain clearance or approval for our product candidate could prevent us from generating revenue from our product candidate and adversely affect our business operations and financial results.

Obtaining market authorization for our product as a treatment for additional indications will require a 510(k) clearance, *de novo* classification and clearance, or pre-market approval under which the FDA will likely place substantial restrictions on how our device is marketed or sold. Moreover, the manufacture of medical devices must comply with the FDA's QSR. In addition, manufacturers must register their manufacturing facilities, list the products with the FDA, and comply with requirements relating to labeling, marketing, complaint handling, adverse event and medical device reporting, reporting of corrections and removals, and import and export. The FDA monitors compliance with the QSR and these other requirements through periodic inspections. If our facilities or those of our manufacturers or suppliers are found to be in violation of applicable laws and regulations, or if we or our manufacturers or suppliers fail to take satisfactory corrective action in response to an adverse inspection, the regulatory authority could take enforcement action, including any of the following sanctions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- customer notifications of repair, replacement, refunds, detention or seizure of our products;
- product recalls;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying requests for marketing authorization of new products or modified products;
- withdrawing marketing authorizations that have already been granted;
- refusing to provide Certificates for Foreign Government;
- refusing to grant export approval for our products; or

- pursuing criminal prosecution.

Regulatory enforcement or inquiries, or other increased scrutiny on us, could affect the perceived safety and efficacy of our product candidate and dissuade our customers from using our product candidate, if and when it is authorized for marketing.

39

---

[Table of Contents](#)

***We have in the past and may be required to conduct clinical trials to support a de novo submission or PMA application for the PoNS device with respect to one or more indications and we expect to be required to conduct clinical trials to support regulatory marketing authorization for future product candidates.***

In order to commercialize our product candidate in the U.S. with respect to specified indications, we may be required by the FDA to submit an application for premarket approval, or PMA, for review and approval by the FDA. A PMA application must be submitted to the FDA if our device cannot be cleared through the 510(k) clearance process, down classified via the *de novo* process, or is not exempt from premarket review by the FDA. In April 2019, the FDA declined our request for *de novo* classification and clearance for mmTBI, in part due to insufficient clinical evidence regarding effectiveness of our product from mmTBI. Following a pre-submission meeting with the FDA, we are assessing the feasibility of a clinical program to advance the development of a study aimed to obtain clearance for gait and balance deficits in mmTBI if nondilutive financing to fund the program becomes available.

We could also be required to submit a PMA application for potential future product candidates. If we are required by the FDA to submit a PMA application, the FDA will also require us to conduct clinical trials. We will receive marketing authorization from the FDA to commercialize products requiring a clinical trial only if we can demonstrate to the

37

---

[Table of Contents](#)

satisfaction of the FDA, through well designed and properly conducted clinical trials, that our product candidate is safe, effective, and otherwise meet the appropriate standards required for marketing authorization for specified indications.

***We have and may continue to encounter substantial delays in planned clinical trials, or our planned clinical trials for other indications using the PoNS device may fail to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the PoNS device to the satisfaction of applicable regulatory authorities.***

We are currently engaged in the process of preparing to commence multiple clinical trials and may continue to pursue additional clinical trials in the future. Clinical trials are complex, expensive, time consuming, uncertain as to outcome and are subject to substantial and unanticipated delays. Before we may begin clinical trials, if a clinical trial is determined to present a significant risk, we may be required to submit and obtain approval for an investigational device exemption, or IDE, that describes, among other things, the manufacture of, and controls for, the device and a complete investigational plan. Clinical trials generally involve a substantial number of patients in a multi-year study. Because we do not have the infrastructure necessary to conduct clinical trials, we will have to hire one or more contract research organizations, or CROs, to conduct trials on our behalf. CRO contract negotiations may be costly and time consuming and we will rely heavily on the CRO to ensure that our trials are conducted in accordance with regulatory and industry standards. We may encounter problems with our clinical trials and any of those problems could cause us or the FDA to suspend those trials or delay the analysis of the data derived from them. Moreover, any failure to abide by the applicable regulatory requirements by us, our CROs, and/or clinical trial sites may result in regulatory enforcement action against such third parties or us.

We cannot guarantee that clinical trials will be conducted as planned or completed on schedule, if at all. A failure of one or more clinical trials can occur at any stage of testing. Delays can be costly and could negatively affect our ability to complete a clinical trial and may allow our competitors to bring products to market before we do, which could impair our ability to successfully commercialize the PoNS device. If we are unable to complete such planned clinical trials, or are unsuccessful in doing so, we may be unable to advance the PoNS device to regulatory authorization and/or certification, and commercialization, which would harm our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

***We may be, and will continue to be, substantially dependent in significant part on third parties outside scientists and third-party research institutions for our research and development in order to conduct be able to commercialize our clinical trials. product.***

Since we may We are and will continue to conduct clinical trials to obtain FDA marketing authorization, we will need to authorization. We rely heavily on third parties over the course of our clinical trials, and as a result will have limited control over the clinical investigators and limited visibility into their day-to-day activities. Nevertheless, we are responsible for ensuring that each of our studies is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol and legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. These third parties and we are required to comply with current good clinical practices, or cGCPs, which are regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for product candidates in clinical development. Regulatory authorities enforce these cGCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators, and trial sites. If we or any of these third parties fail to comply with applicable cGCP regulations, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional nonclinical or clinical trials before approving our marketing applications or may subject them or us to regulatory enforcement actions. We cannot be certain that, upon inspection, such regulatory authorities will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with the cGCP

40

---

[Table of Contents](#)

regulations. In addition, our clinical trials may be required to be conducted with a large number of test patients. Our failure or any failure by these third parties to comply with these regulations or to recruit a sufficient number of patients may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory marketing authorization and/or certification process. Moreover, our business may be implicated if any of these third parties violates federal or state fraud and abuse or false claims laws and regulations or healthcare privacy and security laws.

Any third parties conducting our clinical trials are not and will not be our employees and, except for remedies available to us under our agreements with such third parties, we cannot control whether or not they devote sufficient time and resources to our ongoing preclinical, clinical, and nonclinical programs. These third parties may also have relationships with other commercial entities, including our competitors, for whom they may also be conducting clinical studies or other drug development activities, which could affect their performance on our behalf. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations or meet expected deadlines, if they need to be replaced, or if

38

---

[Table of Contents](#)

the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or regulatory requirements or for other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed, or terminated and we may not be able to complete development of, obtain regulatory marketing authorization and/or certification of or successfully commercialize our product candidate. As a result, our financial results and the commercial prospects for our product candidate would be harmed, our costs could increase, and our ability to generate revenue could be delayed.

If any of our relationships terminate with these third-party CROs, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs or do so on commercially reasonable terms. Switching or adding additional CROs involves additional cost and requires management's time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO begins work. As a result, delays occur, which can materially affect our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. Though we carefully manage our relationships with our CROs, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter similar challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or challenges will not have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition, and prospects.

***We may be required to suspend or discontinue clinical trials due to side effects or other safety risks that could preclude approval of our products.***

Our clinical trials may be suspended at any time for a number of reasons. We may voluntarily suspend or terminate our clinical trials if at any time we believe that they present an unacceptable risk to participants. In addition, regulatory agencies may order the temporary or permanent discontinuation of our clinical trials at any time if they believe that the clinical trials are not being conducted in accordance with applicable regulatory requirements or that they present an unacceptable safety risk to participants.

***If we are unable to obtain a reimbursement code from the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services so that the PoNS device is covered under Medicare and Medicaid, this could have a negative impact on our intended sales and would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and operating results.***

We plan to submit an application to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services for a reimbursement code so that the PoNS device is covered under Medicare and Medicaid. However, there can be no assurance that our application will be successful, or that we will be able to obtain a reimbursement code in a timely manner. In the event that we do not obtain a reimbursement code for the PoNS device, our customers may be unable to obtain reimbursement for their purchases under private or government-sponsored insurance plans, which could have a negative impact on our sales and have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and operating results. In addition, Medicare and its administrative contractors as well as other insurers must find that the PoNS device meets their medical necessity requirements for the treatment of patients with mmTBI or they will not pay for the treatment. In addition, there is a risk that the payment amount for the PoNS device is either too low or too high to incentivize customer adoption.

***If suppliers are unable to obtain coverage or adequate reimbursement for our products, use of our product will not likely products may decline and our ability to generate revenue may be widely used.decreased.***

In the U.S., the commercial success of our existing product and any future products will depend, in part, on the extent to which governmental payers at the federal and state levels, including Medicare and Medicaid, private health insurers and other third-party payers provide coverage for and establish adequate reimbursement levels for procedures utilizing our products. On January 12, 2021, the CMS stated that it was finalizing a new Medicare coverage pathway, MCIT for FDA-designated breakthrough medical devices. The purpose of the MCIT rule was to provide national Medicare coverage as early as the same day as FDA market authorization for breakthrough devices and coverage would last for four years. Under its terms, manufacturers were to have been able to opt-in to MCIT and choose a start date for coverage anytime within two years from the date of FDA market authorization. In November 2021, the MCIT was rescinded and therefore we could not rely on MCIT for purposes of obtaining Medicare coverage for our product. Suppliers that purchase our product to distribute to patients for treatment generally rely on third-party payers to pay for all or part of the costs and fees associated with our products as part of a "bundled" rate for the associated procedures. The existence of coverage and adequate reimbursement for our products and the procedures performed with them by government and private payers is critical to market acceptance of our existing and future products. Suppliers are not likely to furnish our product existing and any future products if they do not receive adequate reimbursement for the procedures utilizing our products.

[Table of Contents](#)

Many private payers currently base their reimbursement policies on the coverage decisions and payment amounts determined by the CMS, which administers the Medicare program. Others may adopt different coverage or reimbursement policies for procedures performed with our products, while some governmental programs, such as Medicaid, have reimbursement policies that vary from state to state, some of which may not pay for the procedures performed with our products in an adequate amount, if at all. A Medicare national or local coverage decision denying coverage for one or more of our products could result in private and other third-party payers also denying coverage for our products.

Third-party payers also may deny reimbursement for our products if they determine that a product used in a procedure was not medically necessary, was not used in accordance with cost-effective treatment methods, as determined by the third-party payer, or was used for an unapproved use. Unfavorable coverage or reimbursement

[Table of Contents](#)

decisions by government programs or private payers underscore the uncertainty that our products face in the market and could have a material adverse effect on our business.

The healthcare industry in the U.S. has experienced a trend toward cost containment as government and private payers seek to control healthcare costs by paying service providers lower rates. While we believe that suppliers will be able to obtain coverage for procedures using our products, the level of payment available to them for such procedures our products may change over time. State Federal and federal state healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, closely regulate program payment levels and have sought to contain, and sometimes reduce, payment levels. Private payers frequently follow government payment policies and are likewise interested in controlling increases in the cost of medical care. In addition, some payers are adopting pay-for-performance programs that differentiate payments to suppliers based on the achievement of documented quality-of-care metrics, cost efficiencies, or patient outcomes. These programs are intended to provide incentives to providers to deliver the same or better results while consuming fewer resources. Because of these programs, and related payer efforts to reduce payment levels, suppliers are seeking ways to reduce their costs, including the amounts they pay to medical device manufacturers. We may not be able to sell our product profitably if third-party payers deny or discontinue coverage or reduce their levels of payment below that which we project, or if our production costs increase at a greater rate than payment levels. Adverse changes in payment rates by payers to suppliers could adversely affect our ability to market, sell our products, and negatively affect our financial performance.

In international markets, medical device regulatory requirements and healthcare payment systems vary significantly from country to country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific product lines. We cannot assure you that our products will be considered cost-effective by international third-party payers, that reimbursement will be available or, if available, that the third-party payers' reimbursement policies will not adversely affect our ability to sell our product profitably. Any failure to receive regulatory or reimbursement approvals would negatively affect market acceptance of our products in any international markets in which those approvals are being sought.

***If we fail to comply with healthcare laws, we could face substantial penalties and financial exposure, and our business, operations and financial condition could be adversely affected.***

We are subject to numerous healthcare laws that place limitations and requirements on the manner in which we conduct our business, including our sales and promotional activities and interactions with healthcare professionals and facilities. In some instances, our interactions with healthcare professionals and facilities that occurred prior to commercialization (e.g., the granting of stock options) could have implications at a later date. The laws that may affect our ability to operate include, among others:

- The US federal healthcare Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits any person from, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting, or receiving remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward either the referral of an individual for, or the purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for or recommending of any good or service for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. The term "remuneration" has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. The Anti-Kickback Statute is subject to evolving interpretation and has been applied by government enforcement officials to a number of common business arrangements in the medical device industry. The government can establish a violation of the Anti-Kickback Statute without proving that a person or entity had actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. There are a number of statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting some common activities from prosecution; however, those exceptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly. Failure to meet all of the

[Table of Contents](#)

requirements of a particular statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor does not make the conduct per se illegal under the Anti-Kickback Statute, but the legality of the arrangement will be evaluated on a ~~case by case~~ case-by-case basis based on the totality of the facts and circumstances. Penalties for violations of the Anti-Kickback Statute include, but are not limited to, criminal, civil and/or administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, individual imprisonment, possible exclusion from Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, and the curtailment or restructuring of operations.

- The federal civil False Claims Act prohibits, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment of government funds that are false or fraudulent, or knowingly making, or using or causing to be made or used, a false record or statement material to ~~a~~ an obligation to pay money to the

[Table of Contents](#)

government, or false or fraudulent claim to ~~avoid, decrease, knowingly and improperly avoiding, decreasing, or conceal~~ concealing an obligation to pay money to the federal government. Private individuals, commonly known as "whistleblowers," can bring civil False Claims Act qui tam actions, on behalf of the government and such individuals may share in amounts paid by the entity to the government in recovery or settlement. In addition, a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal civil False Claims Act. False Claims Act liability is potentially significant in the healthcare industry because the statute provides for treble damages and significant mandatory penalties per false claim or statement for violations. Criminal penalties, including imprisonment and criminal fines, are also possible for making or presenting a false, fictitious or fraudulent claim to the federal government.

- HIPAA, among other things, imposes criminal and civil liability for knowingly and willfully executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third party payors, knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or representation, or making or using any false writing or document knowing the same to contain any materially false fictitious or fraudulent statement or entry in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Similar to the federal healthcare Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation.
- The federal Physician Payment Sunshine Act, implemented as the Open Payments Program, requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services information related to payments and other transfers of value, directly or indirectly, to physicians, physician assistants, nurse practitioners, clinical nurse specialists, certified nurse anesthetists, and certified nurse midwives, and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members.
- Analogous state laws and regulations, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, may apply to sales or marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by any ~~third party~~ ~~third-party~~ payors, including private insurers or patients.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other ~~domestic or foreign laws and~~ governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, damages, fines and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations. Any penalties, damages, fines, curtailment or restructuring of our operations could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our financial results. The risk of our being found in violation of these laws is increased by the fact that their provisions are open to a variety of evolving interpretations and enforcement discretion. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business.

*Our communications regarding products and product candidates, even while in development, are subject to extensive government scrutiny. We may be subject to governmental, regulatory and other legal proceedings relative to advertising, promotion, and marketing, and communications with study subjects and healthcare professionals, which could have a significant negative effect on our business.*

We are subject to governmental oversight and associated civil and criminal enforcement relating to medical device advertising, promotion, and marketing, and such enforcement is evolving and intensifying. Communications regarding our products in development and regarding our clinical trials may subject us to enforcement if they do not comply with applicable laws. In the U.S., we are potentially subject to enforcement

from the FDA, other divisions of the Department of Health and Human Services, the U.S. Federal Trade Commission, or the FTC, the Department of Justice, and state and

41

---

[Table of Contents](#)

local governments. Other parties, including private plaintiffs, also are commonly bringing suit against pharmaceutical and medical device companies. We may be subject to liability based on the actions of individual employees and third-party contractors carrying out activities on our behalf.

43

---

[Table of Contents](#)

***Even after marketing authorization and/or certification for our product is obtained, we are subject to extensive post-market regulation by the FDA and equivalent foreign competent authorities. Our failure to meet strict regulatory requirements could require us to pay fines, incur other costs or even close our facilities.***

Even after we have obtained the proper regulatory clearance or approval to market a product, the FDA has the power to require us to conduct post-market studies. These studies can be very expensive and time-consuming to conduct. Failure to complete such studies in a timely manner could result in the revocation of clearance or approval and the recall or withdrawal of the product, which could prevent us from generating sales from that product in the U.S.

The FDA has broad enforcement powers, and any regulatory enforcement actions or inquiries, or other increased scrutiny on us, could dissuade some healthcare professionals from using our products and adversely affect our reputation and the perceived safety and efficacy of our products.

We are also required to comply with the FDA's Quality System Regulation, or QSR, which covers the methods used in, and the facilities and controls used for, the design, manufacture, quality assurance, labeling, packaging, sterilization, storage, shipping, installation and servicing of our marketed products.

The FDA enforces these requirements via periodic announced and unannounced inspections of manufacturing facilities. In addition, in the future, regulatory authorities and/or customers may require specific packaging of sterile products, which could increase our costs and the price of our products.

Later discovery of previously unknown problems with our products, including unanticipated adverse events or adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, manufacturing problems, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements may result in changes to labeling, restrictions on such products or manufacturing processes, withdrawal of the product from the market, voluntary or mandatory recalls, a requirement to repair, replace or refund the cost of any medical device we manufacture or distribute, fines, suspension of regulatory approvals, product seizures, injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties which would adversely affect our business, operating results and prospects.

***After commercialization, our products may cause or contribute to adverse medical events or be subject to failures or malfunctions that we are required to report to the FDA, and if we fail to do so, we would be subject to sanctions that could harm our reputation, business, financial condition and results of operations. The discovery of serious safety issues with our products, or a recall of our products either voluntarily or at the direction of the FDA or another governmental authority, could have a negative impact on us. The FDA and similar foreign governmental authorities such as the competent authorities of the European Economic Area countries or***

**Health Canada have the authority to require the recall of commercialized products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design or manufacture or in the event that a product poses an unacceptable risk to health. Manufacturers may, under their own initiative, recall a product if any material deficiencies in our products are found. A government-mandated or voluntary recall by us could occur as a result of an unacceptable risk to health, component failures, manufacturing errors, design or labeling defects or other deficiencies and issues.**

We are subject to the FDA's medical device reporting regulations and similar foreign regulations, which require us to report to the FDA when we receive or become aware of information that reasonably suggests that one or more of our products may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or malfunctioned in a way that, if the malfunction were to recur, it could cause or contribute to a death or serious injury. The timing of our obligation to report is triggered by the date we become aware of the adverse event as well as the nature of the event. We may fail to report adverse events of which we become aware within the prescribed timeframe. We may also fail to recognize that we have become aware of a reportable adverse event, especially if it is not reported to us as an adverse event or if it is an adverse event that is unexpected or removed in time from the use of the product. If we fail to comply with our reporting obligations, the FDA could take action, including warning letters, untitled letters, administrative actions, criminal prosecution,

42

---

[\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

imposition of civil monetary penalties, revocation of our device clearance or approval, seizure of our products or delay in clearance or approval of future products.

The FDA and foreign regulatory bodies have the authority to require the recall of commercialized products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design or manufacture of a product or in the event that a product poses an

44

---

[\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

unacceptable risk to health. The FDA's authority to require a recall must be based on a finding that there is reasonable probability that the device could cause serious injury or death. We may also choose to voluntarily recall a product if any material deficiency is found. A government-mandated or voluntary recall by us could occur as a result of an unacceptable risk to health, component failures, malfunctions, manufacturing defects, labeling or design deficiencies, packaging defects or other deficiencies or failures to comply with applicable regulations. Product defects or other errors may occur in the future.

Depending on the corrective action we take to redress a product's deficiencies or defects, the FDA may require, or we may decide, that we will need to obtain new clearances or approvals for the device before we may market or distribute the corrected device. Seeking such clearances or approvals may delay our ability to replace the recalled devices in a timely manner.

Companies are required to maintain certain records of recalls and corrections, even if they are not reportable to the FDA. We may initiate voluntary withdrawals or corrections for our products in the future that we determine do not require notification of the FDA. If the FDA disagrees with our determinations, it could require us to report those actions as recalls and we may be subject to enforcement action. A future recall announcement could harm our reputation with customers, potentially lead to product liability claims against us and negatively affect our sales. Any corrective action, whether voluntary or involuntary, as well as defending ourselves in a lawsuit, will require the dedication of our time and capital, will distract management from operating our business and may harm our reputation and financial results.

Any future failure by us or one of our suppliers to comply with applicable statutes and regulations administered by the FDA, or the failure to timely and adequately respond to any adverse inspectional observations or product safety issues, could result in any of the following enforcement actions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- unanticipated expenditures to address or defend such actions;
- customer notifications or repair, replacement, refund, recall, detention or seizure of our products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying our requests for 510(k) clearance, *de novo* clearance, PMA approval, NDA, or BLA of new products or modified products;
- withdrawing clearances or approvals that have already been granted;
- refusal to grant export approval for our products; or
- criminal prosecution.

Any of these sanctions could have a material adverse effect on our reputation, business, results of operations and financial condition. Furthermore, our key component suppliers may not currently be or may not continue to be in compliance with all applicable regulatory requirements, which could result in our failure to produce our products on a timely basis and in the required quantities, if at all.

***U.S. legislative or FDA regulatory reforms may make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain regulatory approval of our product and to manufacture, market and distribute our products after marketing authorization is obtained.***

From time to time, legislation is drafted and introduced in Congress that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the regulatory approval, manufacture and marketing of regulated products or the reimbursement thereof. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the FDA in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of future products. In addition, FDA regulations and

43

---

[Table of Contents](#)

guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the agency in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. It is impossible to predict whether legislative changes will be enacted, or FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations changed, and what the impact of such changes, if any, may be. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of future products.

Any changes in the laws or regulations that govern the clearance and approval processes relating to our current, planned and future products could make it more difficult and costly to obtain clearance or approval for new products or to

45

---

[Table of Contents](#)

produce, market and distribute existing products. Significant delays in receiving clearance or approval or the failure to receive clearance or approval for any new products would have an adverse effect on our ability to expand our business. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing clearance that we may have obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability.

## Risks Related to our Business Operations

### ***Worldwide economic and social instability could adversely affect our revenue, financial condition, or results of operations.***

The health of the global economy as well as the stability of the social fabric of our society affects our business and operating results. Global economic conditions in recent years have been volatile and disruptive due to a number of factors such as geopolitical conflicts including those in Ukraine and in the Middle East, disruptions in the banking system and financial markets, supply chain disruptions, labor shortages, increased inflation and sustained high interest rates. These conditions from time to time have, and could in the future, caused or exacerbated significant slowdowns in our industry and in the markets in which we operate, negatively impacting our business and results of operations. Our customers may experience financial difficulties or be unable to borrow money to fund their operations, which may adversely impact their ability to purchase our products or to pay for our products on a timely basis, if at all. In addition, adverse economic conditions have impacted, and may continue to adversely impact our suppliers' ability to provide our manufacturer with materials and components, which may negatively impact our business. Furthermore, these economic conditions make it more difficult for us to accurately forecast and plan our future business activities.

***If our expenses are greater than anticipated, then we will have fewer funds with which to pursue our plan of operations and our financing requirements will be greater than anticipated.***

We may find that the costs of carrying out our plan of operations are greater than we anticipate. We expect our expenses to increase over time in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly if and as we: expand our commercialization efforts of our PoNS device in the U.S. for MS; make improvements to our manufacturing process and product design; launch clinical trials for stroke and other indications; pursue further regulatory approvals; maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio; and add additional personnel. Increased operating costs may cause the amount of financing that we require to increase. Investors may be more reluctant to provide additional financing if we cannot demonstrate that we can control our operating costs. There is no assurance that additional financing required as a result of our operating costs being greater than anticipated will be available to us. If we do not control our operating expenses, then we will have fewer funds with which to carry out our plan of operations with the result that our business may fail.

***Our ability to use net operating losses to offset future taxable income may be subject to certain limitations.***

Under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code substantial changes in a corporation's ownership may limit the amount of net operating losses, or NOLs, that can be utilized annually in the future to offset the corporation's (and the corporation's affiliates') U.S. federal and state taxable income. Specifically, this limitation may arise in the event of a cumulative change in ownership of more than 50% within any three-year period. The amount of the annual limitation is determined based on the value of the corporation that underwent the ownership change, immediately before the ownership change. Subsequent ownership changes may further affect any limitation in future years (including by way of exercising of warrants).

We may undertake a study to analyze and determine if any historical ownership changes of us or our subsidiary HMI have occurred to determine if there are any permanent limitations on our ability to utilize NOLs in the future. If we determine that an ownership change has occurred, the limitations on the use of our NOLs could increase our U.S. federal and state tax liability and reduce the amount of cash available for distribution to shareholders or otherwise adversely affect the value of an investment in our common stock or warrants.

***We may not be able to build an effective distribution network for our product.***

We currently have very few employees and we may either build internal capabilities or rely on distributors to sell our product. We cannot assure you that we will succeed in building an internal team or entering into and maintaining productive arrangements with an adequate number of distributors that are sufficiently committed to selling our products. The establishment of a distribution network is expensive and time consuming. As we launch new products and increase our marketing effort with respect to existing products, we will need to continue to hire, train, retain and motivate skilled resources with significant technical knowledge. In addition, the commissions we pay for product sales could increase over time, which would result in higher sales and marketing expenses. Furthermore, if we were to rely on distributors, the current and potential distributors may market and sell the products of our competitors. Even if the distributors market and sell our product, our competitors may be able, by offering higher commission payments or other incentives, to

persuade these distributors to reduce or terminate their sales and marketing efforts related to our product. The distributors may also help competitors solicit business from our existing customers. Some of our independent distributors may likely account for a significant portion of our sales volume, and, if we were to lose them, our sales could be adversely affected. Even if we engage and maintain suitable relationships with an adequate number of distributors, they may not generate revenue as quickly as we expect them to, commit the necessary resources to effectively market and sell our products, or ultimately succeed in selling our product.

***Exposure to United Kingdom political developments, including the outcome of the referendum on membership in the European Union, could be costly and difficult to comply with and could seriously harm our business.***

In June 2016, a referendum was passed in the United Kingdom to leave the European Union, commonly referred to as "Brexit." This decision created an uncertain political and economic environment in the United Kingdom and other European Union countries. The United Kingdom formally left the European Union on January 31, 2020 and the transition period provided for in the withdrawal agreement entered by the United Kingdom and the European Union ended on December 31, 2020. In December 2020, the United Kingdom and the European Union agreed on a trade and cooperation agreement that will apply provisionally after the end of the transition period until it is ratified by the parties to the agreement. On December 31, 2020, the United Kingdom passed legislation giving effect to the trade and cooperation agreement, with the European Union formally adopting the agreement in April 2021. The trade and cooperation agreement covers the general objectives and framework of the relationship between the United Kingdom and the European Union. Depending on the application of the terms of the trade and cooperation agreement, we could face new regulatory costs and challenges.

Brexit may have a significant negative impact on medical device manufacturers such as us. A Notified Body, or NB, that we contracted with as our EU regulatory service provider is located in the UK. CE Mark issued by a UK NB is at risk due to Brexit. Medical device manufacturers with products CE Marked by a UK NB may not be able to place those products on the market until Brexit issues are resolved by the European Commission and local governments. In addition, the acceptance of medical device market authorization from UK NBs by countries outside of the EU, which have traditionally accepted UK NB CE marked products, is at risk of interruption due to Brexit. The complexity of Brexit places a significant burden on UK NBs which may negatively impact their ability to provide market clearance (i.e., CE Marking) reviews and certifications in a timely manner. Delays in CE Marking and delays in the issuance of certificates could delay us from placing our PoNS device on the market outside of the UK including outside of the EU (for those countries that require quality management system certificates and CE approval prior to marketing).

In December 2018, we submitted an application for a CE Mark, which, if approved, would allow us to market the PoNS device in the European Union. During the second quarter of 2019, we engaged with regulators in Europe to answer questions that we received from them as part of their review of our PoNS device for CE marking. In August 2019, we withdrew our application from the EU marketing process due to uncertainty in Europe caused by the switch from the Medical Device Directive, or MDD, to the Medical Device Regulation, or MDR, Brexit, and the withdrawal of Lloyd's Register Quality Assurance, our notified body, from the EU notified body business. We have engaged G-MED NA (North America) as our new ISO registrar and will reconsider submitting to the EU when conditions stabilize.

***As a result of the use of our product in clinical trials, and through the sale of our products, we may be liable for product liability claims and we may not carry sufficient product liability insurance.***

The PoNS device and any devices and product candidates that we may develop in the future may expose us to potential liability from personal injury claims by clinical trial subjects and, if commercially sold, end-users of the product. We maintain clinical trial liability insurance and carry product liability insurance to protect us against the risk that in the future a product liability claim or product recall could materially and adversely affect our business. Inability to obtain sufficient insurance coverage at an acceptable cost or otherwise to protect against potential product liability claims could prevent or inhibit the commercialization of our intended product. We cannot assure you that when we commence distribution of our product that we will be able to obtain or maintain adequate coverage on acceptable terms, or that such insurance will provide adequate coverage against all potential claims. Moreover, even if we maintain adequate insurance, any successful claim could materially and adversely affect our reputation and prospects and divert

management's time and attention. If we are sued for any injury allegedly caused by our future products, our liability could exceed our total assets and our ability to pay the liability.

***We are a "smaller reporting company" under federal securities laws and we cannot be certain whether the reduced reporting requirements applicable to such companies will make our common stock less attractive to investors.***

We are a "smaller reporting company" under federal securities laws. For as long as we continue to be a smaller reporting company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies, including, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements. We may continue to be a smaller reporting company if either (i) the market value of our stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$250 million or (ii) our annual revenue was less than \$100 million during the most recently completed fiscal year and the market value of our stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$700 million. We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may decline or be more volatile.

***Investors could lose confidence in our financial reports, and the value of our common stock may be adversely affected, if our internal controls over financial reporting are found not to be effective by management or by our independent registered public accounting firm.***

As long as we remain a non-accelerated filer, we are exempt from the attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting by our independent auditors pursuant to section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 but are required to make our own internal assessment of the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting. The existence of one or more material weaknesses such as the material weakness we identified in October 2019, could affect the accuracy and timing of our financial reporting.

Investors could lose confidence in our financial reports, and the value of our common stock may be harmed, if our internal controls over financial reporting are found not to be effective by management or by our independent registered public accounting firm.

***Several people who work for us on a part-time consulting basis may be subject to conflicts of interest.***

Several people who provide services to us are part-time consultants. Each may devote part of his working time to other business endeavors, including consulting relationships with other corporate entities, and may have responsibilities to these other entities. Because of these relationships, some of the persons who provide services to us may be subject to conflicts of interest. Such conflicts may include deciding how much time to devote to our affairs, as well as what business opportunities should be presented to us.

[Table of Contents](#)

***Our business and operations would suffer in the event of computer system failures, cyber-attacks or a deficiency in our cybersecurity.***

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer information technology, communication networks and related systems, and those of third parties on which we rely, are vulnerable to damage could be damaged, disrupted, breached or otherwise compromised from computer viruses, malware, natural disasters, terrorism, war, telecommunication and electrical failures, cyber-attacks or cyber-intrusions (including ransomware attacks) over the Internet, attachments to emails, persons inside our organization, or persons with access to systems inside our organization. No network or system can ever be completely secure, and the risk of a security breach or disruption, particularly through cyber-attacks or cyber intrusion, including by computer hackers, foreign governments, and cyber terrorists, has generally increased as the number, intensity and sophistication of attempted attacks and intrusions from around the world have increased. For example, in October 2019, we were the victim of a business email compromise fraud which resulted in our incurring a loss of approximately \$0.1 million. If any such attack, intrusion or other event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our development programs for an indeterminate period of time. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or ongoing or planned clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. In

some cases, data cannot be reproduced. To the extent that any disruption or ~~security breach~~ cybersecurity incident was to result in a loss of or damage to our data

[Table of Contents](#)

or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur material legal claims and liability, damage to our reputation, and the further development of the PoNS device or any future product candidate could be delayed. If a ~~security breach~~ cybersecurity incident results in the exposure or unauthorized disclosure of personal information, we could incur additional costs associated with data breach notification and remediation expenses, investigation costs, regulatory penalties and fines, and legal proceedings. Our insurance coverage may not be adequate to cover all the costs related to such ~~breaches or attacks~~ cybersecurity incidents.

***Challenges to our tax positions in U.S. or non-U.S. jurisdictions, the interpretation and application of recent U.S. tax legislation or other changes in U.S. or non-U.S. taxation of our operations could harm our business, revenue and financial results.***

We operate, or intend to operate, in a number of tax jurisdictions globally, including in the U.S. at the federal, state and local levels, and in several other countries, and we therefore are or will be subject to review and potential audit by tax authorities in these various jurisdictions. Significant judgment is required in determining our worldwide provision for income taxes and other tax liabilities, and tax authorities may disagree with tax positions we take and challenge our tax positions. Successful unilateral or multi-jurisdictional actions by various tax authorities may increase our worldwide effective tax rate, result in additional taxes or other costs or have other material consequences, which could harm our business, revenue and financial results.

Our effective tax rate may also change from year to year or vary materially from our expectations based on changes or uncertainties in the mix of activities and income allocated or earned among various jurisdictions, changes in tax laws and the applicable tax rates in these jurisdictions (including future tax laws that may become material), tax treaties between countries, our eligibility for benefits under those tax treaties and the valuation of deferred tax assets and liabilities. Such changes could result in an increase in the effective tax rate applicable to all or a portion of our income, impose new limitations on deductions, credits or other tax benefits or make other changes that may adversely affect our business, cash flows or financial performance. For example, if we are unable to fully realize the benefit of interest expense incurred in future periods as a result of recent tax law changes (as discussed below), we may need to recognize a valuation allowance on any related deferred tax assets, which would impact our annual effective income tax rate.

In particular, on December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts & Jobs Act, or TCJA, was signed into law. That legislation, as modified by the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security Act, or CARES Act, significantly changed U.S. tax law by, among other things, lowering the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, implementing a modified territorial tax system and imposing a transition tax on deemed repatriated earnings of foreign subsidiaries, or the Section 965 Transition Tax. Certain changes established by the TCJA increased our effective tax rate in prior years, including a new income inclusion item for global intangible low-taxed income, or GILTI, and the Section 965 Transition Tax on our accumulated offshore earnings held in cash and illiquid assets. Additional changes have impacted the timing of our recognition of certain items of loss and deduction, including a new limitation on the Company's deduction for business interest expense, a new limitation of the deduction for NOLs to 80% of current year taxable income (other than as temporarily modified by the CARES Act), elimination of NOL carrybacks for NOLs arising after December 31, 2017 (other than as permitted under the CARES Act with respect to NOLs arising in 2018, 2019, and 2020) and the allowance of the indefinite carryforward of such NOLs, and increased bonus depreciation from 50% to 100% for certain qualified property.

On July 23, 2020, final regulations were published that exempt certain income subject to a high rate of foreign tax from inclusion under GILTI for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017.

The cumulative impact of these and other changes in tax law is uncertain and our business and financial condition could be adversely affected. The impact of these changes on holders of our securities is also uncertain and could be adverse.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## Risks Related to Our Common Stock

***We could be delisted from The Nasdaq Capital Market, which could seriously harm the liquidity of our stock and our ability to raise capital.***

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "HSDT". In order to maintain that listing, we must satisfy minimum financial and other requirements including, without limitation, the minimum stockholders equity requirement and the minimum bid price requirement. There can be no assurances that we will be successful in maintaining, or if we fall out of compliance, in regaining compliance with the continued listing requirements and maintaining the listing of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market. Delisting from Nasdaq could adversely affect our ability to raise additional financing through the public or private sale of equity securities and we would incur additional costs under requirements of state "blue sky" laws in connection with any sales of our securities. Delisting could also have other negative results, including the potential loss of confidence by employees, the loss of institutional investor interest and fewer business development opportunities.

If our common stock is delisted by Nasdaq, the price of our common stock may decline and our common stock may be eligible to be quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board, another over-the-counter quotation system, or on the pink sheets, which would negatively affect the liquidity of our common stock and an investor may find it more difficult to dispose of their common stock or obtain accurate quotations as to the market value of our common stock.

In addition, if our common stock is delisted from the Nasdaq Capital Market and the trading price remains below \$5.00 per share, trading in our common stock might also become subject to the requirements of certain rules promulgated under the Exchange Act, which require additional disclosure by broker-dealers in connection with any trade involving a stock defined as a "penny stock" (generally, any equity security not listed on a national securities exchange or quoted on **NASDAQ** Nasdaq that has a market price of less than \$5.00 per share, subject to certain exceptions).

On September 19, 2022, we received written notice (the "Notification Letter") from The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC ("Nasdaq") notifying us that the Company was not in compliance with the minimum bid price requirements set forth in Nasdaq Listing Rule 5550(a)(2) for continued listing on the Nasdaq Capital Market. Nasdaq Listing Rule 5550(a)(2) requires listed securities maintain a minimum closing bid price of \$1.00 per share, and Nasdaq Listing Rule 5810(c)(3)(A) provides that a failure to meet the minimum closing bid price requirement exists if the deficiency continues for a period of 30 consecutive business days. Based on the closing bid price of the Company's common stock for the 30 consecutive business days prior to the date of the Notification Letter, the Company did not meet the minimum closing bid price requirement. To regain compliance, the closing bid price of the Company's common stock must be at least \$1.00 per share for a minimum of 10 consecutive business days at any time prior to March 20, 2023. There can be no assurance that we will be able to regain compliance with the minimum bid price requirement and other Nasdaq listing criteria. If we fail to meet the applicable continued listing requirements for the Nasdaq Capital Market, Nasdaq may delist our common stock. Additionally, Nasdaq rules allow an expedited delisting of securities of companies that have had one or more reverse stock splits with a cumulative ratio of one for 250 or more shares over the prior two-year period. Under these rules, if a company falls out of compliance with the \$1.00 minimum bid price after completing reverse stock splits over the immediately preceding two years that cumulatively result in a ratio one for 250 shares, the company will not be able to avail itself of any compliance periods and Nasdaq will instead require the issuance of a Staff delisting determination, which is appealable to a hearings panel. Our ability to remain listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market may be negatively impacted by this new Nasdaq rule.

We continue to actively monitor our performance with respect to the listing standards and will consider available options to resolve any deficiency and maintain compliance with the Nasdaq rules. There can be no assurance that we will be able to maintain compliance or, if we fall out of compliance, regain compliance with any deficiency, or if we implement an option that regains our compliance, maintain compliance thereafter.

***An active trading market for our common stock on The Nasdaq Capital Market may not continue to develop or be sustained.***

Although our common stock is listed on The Nasdaq Capital Market, we cannot assure you that an active trading market for our common stock will continue to develop or be sustained. If an active market for our common stock does not continue to develop or is not sustained, it may be difficult for investors in our common stock to sell their shares of our common stock without depressing the market price for the shares or to sell the shares at all.

***Trading of our common stock could be sporadic, and the price of our common stock may be volatile; we caution you as to the highly illiquid nature of an investment in our shares.***

Our common stock has been listed on The Nasdaq Capital Market since April 11, 2018. Securities of microcap and small-cap companies have experienced substantial volatility in the past, often based on factors unrelated to the companies' financial performance or prospects. We believe that trading in our stock has been and will likely continue to be subject to significant volatility. These factors include macroeconomic developments in North America and globally and market perceptions of the attractiveness of particular industries. Factors unrelated to our performance that may affect the price of our common stock include the following: the extent of analytical coverage available to investors concerning our business may be limited if investment banks with research capabilities do not follow us, a reduction in trading volume and general market interest in our common stock may affect an investor's ability to trade significant numbers of shares of our common stock; the size of our public float may limit the ability of some institutions to invest in our common stock. As a result of any of these factors, the market price of our common stock at any given point in time may not accurately reflect our long-term value. The price of our common stock may increase or decrease in response to a number of events and factors, including: changes in financial estimates; our acquisitions and financings; quarterly

[\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

variations in our operating results; the operating and share price performance of other companies that investors may deem comparable; and purchase or sale of blocks of our common stock. These factors, or any of them, may materially adversely affect the prices of our common shares regardless of our operating performance.

The market price of our common stock is affected by many other variables which are not directly related to our success and are, therefore, not within our control. These include other developments that affect the breadth of the public market for shares of our common stock and the attractiveness of alternative investments. The effect of these and other factors on the market price of our common stock is expected to make our common stock price volatile in the future, which may result in losses to investors.

***Provisions in our corporate charter documents and under Delaware law may prevent or frustrate attempts by our stockholders to change our management and hinder efforts to acquire a controlling interest in us, and the market price of our common stock may be lower as a result.***

There are provisions in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws that may make it difficult for a third party to acquire, or attempt to acquire, control of our company, even if a change of control was considered favorable by you and other stockholders. For example, our board of directors has the authority to issue up to 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock. The board of directors can fix the price, rights, preferences, privileges, and restrictions of the preferred stock without any further vote or action by our stockholders. The issuance of shares of preferred stock may delay or prevent a change of control transaction. As a result, the market price of our common stock and the voting and other rights of our stockholders may be adversely affected. An issuance of shares of preferred stock may result in the loss of voting control to other stockholders.

Our charter documents also contain other provisions that could have an anti-takeover effect, including:

- stockholders are not entitled to remove directors other than by a 66 2/3% vote and only for cause;

- stockholders are not be permitted to take actions by written consent;
- stockholders cannot call a special meeting of stockholders; and
- stockholders must give advance notice to nominate directors or submit proposals for consideration at stockholder meetings.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, we are subject to the anti-takeover provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which regulates corporate acquisitions by prohibiting Delaware corporations from engaging in specified business combinations with particular stockholders of those companies. These provisions could discourage potential acquisition proposals and could delay or prevent a change of control transaction. They could also have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our common stock, including transactions that may be in your best interests. These provisions may also prevent changes in our management or limit the price that investors are willing to pay for our stock.

***Our certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware and, to the extent enforceable, the federal district courts of the United States of America will be the exclusive forums for substantially all disputes between us and our stockholders, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers or employees.***

Our certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware is the exclusive forum for (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) any action asserting a claim for breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any of our directors, officers or other employees to us or our stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim arising pursuant to any provision of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our certificate of incorporation or our bylaws or (iv) any action asserting a claim governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Our certificate of incorporation further provides that the federal district courts of the United States of America will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act, subject to and contingent upon a final adjudication in the State of Delaware of the enforceability of such exclusive forum provision. These exclusive forum provisions may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers or other employees, which may discourage such lawsuits against us and our directors, officers and other employees. For example, stockholders who do bring a claim in the Court of Chancery could face

[Table of Contents](#)

additional litigation costs in pursuing any such claim, particularly if they do not reside in or near the State of Delaware. The Court of Chancery and federal district courts may also reach different judgments or results than would other courts, including courts where a stockholder considering an action may be located or would otherwise choose to bring the action, and such judgments or results may be more favorable to us than to our stockholders. Some companies that adopted a similar federal district court forum selection provision are currently subject to a suit in the Chancery Court of Delaware by stockholders who assert that the provision is not enforceable. If a court were to find either choice of forum provision contained in our certificate of incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our business and financial condition. For example, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware recently determined that the exclusive forum provision of federal district courts of the United States of America for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act is not enforceable. As a result of this decision, we do not currently intend to enforce the federal forum selection provision in our certificate of incorporation, unless the decision is reversed on appeal. However, if the decision is reviewed on appeal and ultimately overturned by the Delaware Supreme Court, we would enforce the federal district court exclusive forum provision.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish or cease publishing research or reports about us, our business or our market, or if they change their recommendations regarding our stock adversely, our stock price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that industry or securities analysts may publish about us, our business, our market or our competitors. If any of the analysts who may cover us change their recommendation regarding our stock adversely, or provide more favorable relative recommendations about our competitors, our stock price would likely decline. If any analyst who may cover us were to cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which in turn could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

50

---

[\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

**General Risks**

***We have not paid any dividends and do not foresee paying dividends in the future.***

We intend to retain earnings, if any, to finance the growth and development of our business and do not intend to pay cash dividends on shares of our common stock in the foreseeable future. The payment of future cash dividends, if any, will be reviewed periodically by the board of directors and will depend upon, among other things, conditions then existing including earnings, financial condition and capital requirements, restrictions in financing agreements, business opportunities and other factors.

***A decline in the price of our common stock could affect our ability to raise any required working capital and adversely affect our operations.***

A decline in the price of our common stock could result in a reduction in the liquidity of our common stock and a reduction in our ability to raise any required capital for our operations. Because our operations to date have been principally financed through public and private offerings of our common stock and warrants and exercises of options and warrants, a decline in the price of our common stock could have an adverse effect upon our liquidity and our continued operations. A reduction in our ability to raise equity capital in the future may have a material adverse effect upon our business plans and operations. If our stock price declines, we may not be able to raise additional capital or generate funds from operations sufficient to meet our obligations.

***We are heavily dependent upon the ability and expertise of our management team and a very limited number of employees and the loss of such individuals could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results or financial condition.***

We currently have a very small management team. Our success is dependent upon the ability, expertise and judgment of our senior management. While employment agreements are customarily used as a primary method of retaining the services

51

---

[\*\*Table of Contents\*\*](#)

of key employees, these agreements cannot assure the continued services of such employees. Any loss of the services of such individuals could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results or financial condition.

**ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS**

Not applicable.

## ITEM 1C. CYBERSECURITY

Our corporate information technology, communication networks, enterprise applications, accounting and financial reporting platforms, and related systems are necessary for the operation of our business. We use these systems, among others, to manage our product development, to communicate internally and externally, to operate our accounting and record-keeping functions, to store and access data including sensitive patient data and for many other key aspects of our business. Our business operations rely on the secure collection, storage, transmission, and other processing of proprietary, confidential, and sensitive data.

### Risk Management and Strategy

We recognize the importance of assessing, identifying, and managing material risks associated with cybersecurity threats, as such term is defined in Item 106(a) of Regulation S-K. These risks include, among other things: operational risks, intellectual property theft, fraud, extortion, harm to employees, customers or patients, violation of data privacy or security laws, litigation, and legal, financial and reputational risk.

In coordination with third-party consultants, we have implemented and maintain various information security processes designed to identify, assess and manage material risks from cybersecurity threats to our critical systems and data. Depending on the environment, we implement and maintain various technical, physical, and organizational measures, processes, standards, and/or policies designed to manage and mitigate material risks from cybersecurity threats to our information systems and data, including risk assessments, incident detection and response, vulnerability management, disaster recovery and business continuity plans, internal controls within our accounting and financial reporting functions, encryption of data, network security controls, access controls, physical security, asset management, systems monitoring, vendor risk management program and employee training. We conduct annual reviews and tests of our information security program to evaluate its effectiveness and improve our security measures and planning.

To operate our business, we utilize certain third-party service providers and vendors to support a variety of functions. We seek to engage reliable, reputable service providers and vendors that maintain cybersecurity programs, and we implement a vetting process to ensure that all third-party service providers and vendors comply with our cybersecurity program requirements. Depending on the nature of the services provided, the sensitivity and quantity of information processed, and the identity of the service provider, our vendor management process may include reviewing the cybersecurity practices of such provider, contractually imposing obligations on the provider, conducting security assessments, and conducting periodic reassessments during their engagement.

We are not aware of any risks from cybersecurity threats, including as a result of any cybersecurity incidents, which have materially affected or are reasonably likely to materially affect our Company, including our business strategy, results of operations, or financial condition.

### Governance

Our Board of Directors holds oversight responsibility for the Company's strategy and risk management, including material risks related to cybersecurity threats. Oversight of such cybersecurity risks is executed directly by the Board of Directors. The Board receives reports and engages in regular discussions with management regarding the Company's significant risk exposures resulting from material cybersecurity threats and the measures implemented to monitor and reasonably manage these risks.

### [Table of Contents](#)

Our Director of Information Technology leads our information security organization and reports to our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer on matters related to cybersecurity who then in turn report to the Board of Directors any material information regarding such cybersecurity matters. Our Director of Information Technology has over 30 years of IT experience and has developed a focus of experience in the healthcare industry.

## ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

The Company leases corporate office space in Newtown, Pennsylvania and Ewing, New Jersey under an operating lease that expires in March 2025 and January 2024, respectively. The lease does not contain any options to extend. We believe our current facilities are adequate for our needs.

**ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

From time to time, we are subject to litigation and claims arising in the ordinary course of business. Although the results of litigation and claims cannot be predicted with certainty, as of the date of this filing, we do not believe we are party to any claim or litigation, the outcome of which, if determined adversely to us, would individually or in the aggregate be reasonably expected to have a material adverse effect on our business or financial condition. Regardless of the outcome, litigation can have an adverse impact on us because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of management resources and other factors.

**ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES**

Not applicable.

51 53

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**PART II****ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES****Market Information**

Our common stock is traded on the Nasdaq under the symbol "HSDT".

**Holders**

As of ~~March 6, 2023~~ March 21, 2024, there were approximately 53 38 holders of record of our common stock. The number of holders of record is based on the actual number of holders registered on the books of our transfer agent and does not reflect holders of shares in "street name" or persons, partnerships, associations, corporations or other entities identified in security position listings maintained by depository trust companies.

**Dividend Policy**

We have never paid any cash dividends on our common stock and have no current plans to pay any cash dividends. Our current policy is to retain any future earnings for use in our business.

**Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.**

None.

**ITEM 6. [Reserved]**

52 54

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this Form 10-K. Further, you should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with "Item 1A. Risk Factors" included elsewhere in this Form 10-K for a discussion of important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results described in or implied by the forward-looking statements contained in the following discussion and analysis. See also "Forward-Looking Statements."

### Company Overview

We are a neurotechnology company focused on neurological wellness. Our purpose is to develop, license or acquire non-implantable technologies targeted at reducing symptoms of neurological disease or trauma.

Our product, known as the Portable Neuromodulation Stimulator, or PoNS®, is an innovative non-implantable medical device, inclusive of a controller and mouthpiece, which delivers mild electrical stimulation to the surface of the tongue to provide treatment of gait deficit and chronic balance deficit. PoNS Therapy® is integral to the overall PoNS solution and is the physical therapy applied by patients during use of the PoNS neuromodulation stimulator. PoNS has marketing clearance in the U.S. for use in the U.S. as a short-term treatment of gait deficit due to mild-to-moderate symptoms for MS, and is to be used as an adjunct to a supervised therapeutic exercise program in patients 22 years of age and over by prescription only. We began accepting prescriptions for PoNS in the U.S. in March 2022, and commercial sales of PoNS commenced in April 2022. PoNS is authorized for sale in Canada for three indications: (i) for use as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of chronic balance deficit due to mild-to-moderate traumatic brain injury, or mmTBI, and is to be used in conjunction with physical therapy, or PoNS TherapyTM; therapy; (ii) for use as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from MS and it is to be used in conjunction with physical therapy; and (iii) as a short term treatment (14 weeks) of gait deficit due to mild and moderate symptoms from stroke, to be used in conjunction with physical therapy. It has been commercially available in Canada since March 2019. PoNS is authorized for sale as a Class IIa medical device in Australia and we have been seeking a business partner to commercialize and distribute PoNS in Australia.

### Recent Developments

#### ***Change of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for Fiscal 2022 Corporate Updates***

In September 2022, On September 28, 2023, the Audit Committee of the Board (i) engaged Baker Tilly US, LLP ("Baker Tilly") Company announced that Wolters Kluwer Health – Medi-Span® assigned universal product code numbers to serve as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm PoNS device controller and mouthpiece. The NDC/UPC/HRI codes for the PoNS device controller is 64288-00046 at \$25,700 and the PoNS mouthpiece is 64288-00043 at \$7,900. In February 2024, the Company confirmed that the PoNS device and mouthpiece are also listed on the First Data Bank ("FDB") Prizm® database.

Previously, on September 19, 2022, the Company received notice from the Listing Qualifications Staff (the "Staff") of The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC ("Nasdaq") that the bid price for the Company's fiscal year ending December 31, 2022 Class A Common Stock ("common stock") had closed below \$1.00 per share for the prior 30-consecutive business day period and that the Company had been granted a 180-day grace period, through March 20, 2023, to regain compliance with Nasdaq Marketplace Rule 5550(a)(2) (the "Minimum Bid Price Rule"). Subsequently, on March 21, 2023, the Company was granted a second 180-day grace period through September 18, 2023.

On August 31, 2023, following a reverse stock split of the Company's common stock as described below, the Company received formal notification from Nasdaq confirming that it had regained compliance, and (ii) determined to dismiss BDO USA, LLP ("BDO") that the Company satisfied all other applicable criteria for continued listing on the Nasdaq Stock Market. As a result of the determination, the listing matter is closed.

At the annual meeting of stockholders on May 24, 2023, the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for stockholders voted to approve a reverse stock split of the year ending December 31, 2021.

#### ***Corporate Updates***

We began accepting prescriptions for PoNS Company's outstanding common stock at a ratio in the U.S. range of 1-for-10 to 1-for-80 to be determined at the

[Table of Contents](#)

discretion of the Company's Board of Directors (the "Board"). On August 11, 2023, the Board approved a 1-for-50 reverse stock split of the Company's issued and outstanding shares of common stock (the "Reverse Stock Split") and on August 15, 2023, the Company filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware a Certificate of Amendment to its Certificate of Incorporation to effect the Reverse Stock Split. The Reverse Stock Split became effective as of 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time on August 16, 2023, and the Company's common stock began trading on a split-adjusted basis when the Nasdaq Stock Market opened on August 17, 2023. All share and per share amounts in this Report have been reflected on a post-split basis.

During the ~~first~~ third quarter of 2022, 2023, the Company began implementing the transition of the manufacturing of PoNS device controllers and ~~our first commercial sales began in April 2022.~~ mouthpieces to Minnetronix, Inc. from its previous contract manufacturer, Key Tronic Corporation. The majority of this transition was completed by the end of 2023, and the Company expects the transition to be fully completed by mid-2024.

Presently, PoNS Therapy is not covered by Center for Medicare and Medicaid ("CMS") or reimbursed by any third-party ~~payors~~ ~~payers~~ in the US.

In June 2022, the Company launched the Patient Therapy Access Program ("PTAP") program, which will provide qualifying patients access to PoNS therapy at a significantly reduced price. To qualify for the PTAP pricing, the patient must provide a letter of medical necessity and consent to the release of their medical records for the last two years. Because of the significantly reduced price, the patient must also sign a document that prohibits him/her from submitting a reimbursement claim to third-party payers. PTAP participants will also be invited to join the Company's registry program, which is designed to collect important health information to establish the value of PoNS on key therapeutic outcomes and will supplement the data collected through clinical trials and real-world data. The Company began processing orders under the PTAP program in June 2022, which is expected to run through June 2023.

[Table of Contents](#)

In December 2022, we launched an e-commerce site in the US to make it easier for patients to obtain PoNS systems. Accessed via ~~ponstherapy.com~~, the site is powered through a new partnership with UpScriptHealth, a leading telehealth company focused on making medications and devices available direct-to-consumer. UpScriptHealth's platform provides for (1) online health evaluations with qualified medical providers, (2) fulfillment of prescriptions required for PoNS Therapy™ and (3) shipping of PoNS devices directly to the homes of eligible patients in the United States. The UpScriptHealth platform makes it possible for people with MS to have a PoNS device delivered directly to their doorstep.

During 2021, we contracted with an industry consultant to conduct a health economic study of PoNS. Based upon the results of this study and comparing PoNS to other medical devices utilizing similar patented technologies we established a U.S. list price for the PoNS device of \$25,700, comprised of \$17,800 for the controller and \$7,900 for the mouthpiece. We are pursuing commercial insurance coverage and Medicare reimbursement for PoNS within the Durable Medical Equipment, or DME, benefit category. While there are currently no applicable ~~We initially applied for unique Healthcare Common Procedure Coding System or HCPCS, codes to describe the PoNS device or mouthpiece, we intend to use miscellaneous codes – E1399 (Miscellaneous durable medical equipment) and A9999 (Miscellaneous DME supply or accessory, not otherwise specified) until specific HCPCS codes are created. We initially applied for unique HCPCS ("HCPCS") codes during the third quarter of 2021. In order to address CMS's request for additional information to "further understand the PoNS device indication for use", we decided to move forward monitor real-world utilization of PoNS Therapy and collect additional clinical and real-world data. As such, evidence through our ongoing PoNSTEP study and ~~upcoming our registry program~~, program. Based on consistent reports of positive therapeutic benefits experienced by MS patients through our commercial programs, we plan to resubmit reapplied for HCPCS codes in the second quarter of 2023 leveraging new information addressing their questions and providing further support in favor of obtaining unique HCPCS codes upon availability of a body of evidence that we consider adequate for PoNS. In February 2024, CMS assigned HCPCS Level II codes A4593, "Neuromodulation stimulator system, adjunct to rehabilitation therapy regime" to describe the PoNS controller and sufficient A4594,~~

"Neuromodulation stimulator system, adjunct to address CMS's questions, rehabilitation therapy regime, mouthpiece each" to describe the PoNS mouthpiece. The new HCPCS codes will be effective April 1, 2024. We expect to meet interact again with CMS in June 2023, the second half of 2024 – to seek Medicare final payment determinations for both codes to be effective at the next scheduled date of October 1, 2024.

**The Company** We will continue monitoring to monitor the development of CMS's new pathway for coverage of innovative new devices, Transitional Coverage of Emerging Technology ("TCET"), which is replacing the repealed Medicare Coverage of Innovative Technologies ("MCIT") rule. CMS is expected to share more provide additional information about TCET with to the public for comments in 2023, 2024. As we follow the evolution of TCET, we will continue to assess our evidence generation strategy to reach the greatest potential to gain CMS reimbursement benefits as a result of our Breakthrough designation in MS.

We also intend to provide broad access and reimbursement for the PoNS Therapy over time through commercial insurers. Prior to the initiation of CMS or broad commercial payer coverage, we anticipate the primary source of sales will be self-pay patients. We expect to support the cost of the PoNS Therapy by offering a cash pay discount, collaborating with third parties to provide self-pay patients with financing options as well as working with advocacy groups and charitable organizations to help self-pay patients access our technology. In general, we anticipate that it will take at least 24 months to obtain broad coverage and reimbursement among government and private payers. payers once the HCPCS codes become effective.

We entered into the Exclusivity Agreement with HTC, whereby, subject Our Patient Therapy Access Program ("PTAP"), launched in June 2022 and effective through June 2023, provided qualifying patients access to certain terms and conditions, we granted to HTC the exclusive right to provide the PoNS Therapy in the Fraser Valley at a significantly reduced price. The PTAP was not renewed and Vancouver metro regions of British Columbia, where HTC has operated a PoNS authorized clinic since February 2019. HTC is to purchase the PoNS devices for use in these regions exclusively from us and terminated on terms no less favorable than the then-current standard terms and conditions. This Exclusivity Agreement replaces the previous Co-Promotion Agreement between the parties dated October 2019. This exclusivity right was granted for a value of CAD\$273 thousand which is represented by the unamortized payment that we received from HTC under the Co-Promotion Agreement and has an initial term of five years, renewable by HTC for one additional five-year term upon sixty days' written notice to us.

As discussed further in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements, in August 2022, we closed on a public offering of our Class A common stock and warrants ("August 2022 Public Offering") and received net proceeds of approximately \$16.3 million June 30, 2023.

#### Material Trends and Uncertainties

##### *Global Economic Conditions*

Generally, worldwide economic conditions remain uncertain, particularly in part due to the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic supply chain disruptions, labor shortages, global conflicts and increased inflation. The general economic and capital market conditions both in the U.S. and worldwide, have been

54

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

volatile in the past recent years and at times have adversely affected our access to capital and have increased the cost of capital. The capital and credit markets may not be available to support future capital raising activity

56

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

on favorable terms. If economic conditions continue to remain volatile or decline, our future cost of equity or debt capital and access to the capital markets could be adversely affected.

The COVID-19 pandemic that began in late 2019 introduced significant volatility to the global economy, disrupted supply chains and had a widespread adverse effect on the financial markets. Additionally, our operating results could be materially impacted by changes in the overall macroeconomic environment and other economic factors. Changes in economic conditions, supply chain constraints, logistics challenges, labor shortages, global conflicts such as the conflict in Ukraine and in the Middle East, and steps taken by governments and central banks particularly in response to the COVID-19 pandemic as well as other stimulus and spending programs, have led to higher inflation, which has led to an increase in costs and has caused changes in fiscal and monetary policy, including increased interest rates. Although we may take measures to mitigate these impacts, if these measures are not effective, our business, financial condition, results of operations, and liquidity could be materially adversely affected.

#### **Other Trends and Uncertainties**

Beginning in late 2021, production delays began to negatively impact the ability of our contract manufacturer to successfully ramp up production during 2022 to fulfill orders for both commercial sales and clinical trials, which has been exacerbated by both labor and supply chain shortages currently being experienced by many industries in the U.S.

To successfully commercialize, we need to continue to build infrastructure necessary to grow our business including adding headcount and implementing or upgrading business systems. Competition for talent in today's labor market may impact our ability to add headcount and to recruit talent with the expertise we need to develop our commercial infrastructure.

In response to the aforementioned challenges and trends, we have supplemented our personnel including quality resources at our contract manufacturer. Additionally, during the third quarter of 2023, we began implementing the transition of the manufacturing of PONS device controllers and mouthpieces to actively recruit and source candidates Minnetronix, Inc. from our previous contract manufacturer, Key Tronic Corporation. We expect the transition to fill positions as we build out our team to support our anticipated growth. be fully completed by mid-2024.

5557

---

#### Table of Contents

#### **Results of Operations**

The following table summarizes our results of operations for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,			Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	Change	2023	2022	Change
<b>Revenue:</b>						
Product sales, net:						
United States	\$ 318	\$ —	\$ 318	\$ 324	\$ 318	\$ 6
Canada	460	493	(33)	281	460	(179)
Total product sales, net	778	493	285	605	778	(173)
Other revenue	9	29	(20)	39	9	30
Total revenue	787	522	265	644	787	(143)
Cost of revenue	463	298	165	583	463	120
Gross profit	324	224	100	61	324	(263)
<b>Operating expenses:</b>						
Selling, general and administrative	10,640	12,176	(1,536)			
Research and development	4,262	5,990	(1,728)			
Selling, general and administrative expenses				9,271	10,640	(1,369)
Research and development expenses				2,942	4,262	(1,320)

Amortization expense	181	200	(19)	117	181	(64)
Goodwill impairment	757	—	—	—	—	—
Goodwill and fixed asset impairment	—	—	—	159	757	(598)
Total operating expenses	15,840	18,366	(2,526)	12,489	15,840	(3,351)
Loss from operations	(15,516)	(18,142)	2,626	(12,428)	(15,516)	3,088
<b>Nonoperating income (expense)</b>						
Interest expense, net	(834)	—	(834)	—	—	—
Interest income (expense), net	—	—	—	257	(834)	1,091
Change in fair value of derivative liability	3,027	—	3,027	2,966	3,027	(61)
Foreign exchange (loss) gain	(756)	10	(766)	275	(756)	1,031
Other income (expense), net	7	—	7	80	7	73
Nonoperating income (expense), net	1,444	10	1,434	3,578	1,444	2,134
Loss before provision for income taxes	(14,072)	(18,132)	4,060	(8,850)	(14,072)	5,222
Provision for income taxes	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Net loss</b>	<b>\$ (14,072)</b>	<b>\$ (18,132)</b>	<b>\$ 4,060</b>	<b>\$ (8,850)</b>	<b>\$ (14,072)</b>	<b>\$ 5,222</b>

**Year Ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 Compared to Year Ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022**

#### Revenue

The **increase** **decrease** in total net product sales reflects the U.S. commercial launch of PoNS for MS in April 2022, partially offset by a decrease in product sales in Canada. The decrease in Canada product sales was primarily attributable to lower Canadian to U.S. dollar translation rates during 2022. Canada product sales. The decrease in Canada product sales resulted primarily from the inclusion of approximately \$120 thousand of revenue recognized in connection with the delivery of the remaining 16 PoNS devices that had been included as noncash consideration in the Company's acquisition of Heuro in the prior year sales. Other revenue for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was comprised of license fee revenue related to the amortization of the up-front payment we received in connection with our Co-Promotion Agreement with HTC, agreements that contained an exclusive distribution right.

#### Cost of Revenue

The increase in cost of revenue was primarily attributable to **fixed** overhead costs, including salaries and benefits of employees involved in management of the supply chain and **inventory-related cost** certain production costs.

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### Gross Profit

Gross profit for the year ended December 31, 2023 was \$61 thousand compared to gross profit of \$324 thousand for the same period in the prior year. Reduced absorption of fixed overhead costs across the lower unit volume of PoNS device sales **due** **in** 2023 as compared to **higher** sales volume as well as other costs and adjustments, the prior year was the primary reason for this decrease.

#### Selling, General and Administrative Expenses

The decrease in selling, general and administrative expenses was primarily **due to** **from** a **net \$0.6 million** **decrease** **of \$1.5 million** in stock-based compensation expense, partially offset by increased compensation expenses related to personnel additions and a \$0.6 million decrease in **late**

[Table of Contents](#)

2021 and early in 2022 to support payroll taxes including the U.S. commercial launch. \$0.5 million Employee Retention Credit claims we filed for the prior eligible periods. Refer to Note 9 to our consolidated financial statements for detailed information about stock-based compensation.

**Research and Development Expenses**

The decrease in research and development expenses was driven primarily by a decrease in product development expenses and clinical trial activities as we transitioned our focus from product development and clinical trials to U.S. commercialization activities beginning in 2022, as well as a \$0.5 million decrease in stock-based compensation expense. 2022.

**Amortization Expense**

Amortization expense is primarily comprised of the amortization of acquired finite-lived intangible assets. The decrease in amortization expense is the result of the customer relationships primarily due to certain intangible assets becoming fully amortized during the first quarter of 2021 as well as lower Canadian to U.S. dollar translation rates during 2022. year ended December 31, 2023. Refer to Note 6 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information about the composition of intangible assets.

**Goodwill and Fixed Asset Impairment**

During the third quarter of 2023, we recorded an impairment of \$0.2 million for certain machinery used in the production of our inventory. During the third quarter of 2022, we recorded a goodwill impairment charge of \$0.8 million, reducing the goodwill balance to zero. The significant decline in the price of our common stock following the August 2022 Public Offering was considered a triggering event for testing whether goodwill was impaired. Management performed a quantitative assessment as of September 30, 2022 and determined that the carrying value of our single reporting unit exceeded the estimated fair value. Refer to Note 3 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information.

**Nonoperating Income (Expense)**

**Interest Expense, Income (Expense), Net**

Net interest income for the year ended December 31, 2023 was primarily attributable to interest income earned on investments of excess cash in an unrestricted money market savings account, money market mutual funds, treasury bills and a certificate of deposit. We recorded \$0.9 million of non-cash interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2022 in connection with the derivative liability classification of warrants issued in connection with the August 2022 Public Offering. Refer to Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information. The interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2022 was offset by \$0.1 million of interest income earned on investments of excess cash in an unrestricted money market savings account and a certificate of deposit.

**Change in Fair Value of Derivative Liability**

As discussed in more detail in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements, the warrants issued in connection with the August 2022 Public Offering are being accounted for as a derivative liability instrument. The change in fair value of derivative liability for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 of \$3.0 million is the result of the decrease in fair value from the date of issuance on August 9, 2022 and December 31, 2022, primarily our stock price offset partially by reduced outstanding warrant exposure due to a decrease in warrant exercises during the Company's stock price. year.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**Foreign Exchange (Loss) Gain**

The foreign exchange loss gain for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 was primarily due to lower Canadian to U.S. dollar exchange rates in 2022 2023.

[Table of Contents](#)

### Liquidity and Capital Resources

The following table summarizes our cash and cash equivalents and working capital as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 (in thousands):

	December 31,		December 31,		December 31, December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022	2022	2022
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 14,549	\$ 11,005	\$ 5,182	\$ 14,549		
Working capital	14,709	9,941	5,559	14,709		

Our available capital resources were have been primarily used to expand our U.S. commercialization efforts, fund manufacturing activities for the PoNS device, conduct clinical trials and for working capital and general corporate purposes. Our major primary sources of cash and cash equivalents have been proceeds from public and private offerings of our common stock which most recently included \$16.3 million in net proceeds we received from a public offering of our common stock and to a lesser extent, exercises of warrants.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, warrants completed in connection with the August 2022 ("August 2022 Public Offering, we received gross proceeds of \$18.0 million and paid \$1.7 million of share issuance costs. Due to the derivative liability classification of warrants issued Offering" as discussed in connection with the August 2022 Public Offering, \$0.9 million of the share issuance costs were recorded as interest expense. In addition, we received \$0.6 million from the sale of common stock to Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC ("Lincoln Park") pursuant to a purchase agreement (the "LPC Purchase Agreement") and registration rights agreement with Lincoln Park. We do not intend to issue any additional shares under the LPC Purchase Agreement. Refer to more detail in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for additional details about the stock issuances included our 2022 Annual Report on Form 10-K.

As discussed in 2022. There were no exercises of warrants or stock options during the year ended December 31, 2022.

During the year ended December 31, 2021, more detail in connection with two underwritten public offerings in February and November 2021, we received net proceeds of \$9.6 million and \$9.9 million, respectively. In addition, we received net proceeds of \$0.6 million from the sale of common stock to Lincoln Park pursuant to the LPC Purchase Agreement. Refer to Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements, for additional details about the stock issuances in 2021. We Company entered into a sales agreement related to our at-the-market offering program ("ATM") under which we may offer and sell shares having gross proceeds up to \$2.0 million. During the year ended December 31, 2023 the Company issued and sold shares with gross proceeds of \$0.5 million under the ATM. In addition, the Company received \$1.3 million gross proceeds of \$0.6 million from the issuance of shares upon the exercise of warrants in 2021, for the year ended December 31, 2023.

### Statement of Cash Flows

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,			Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	Change	2023	2022	Change
Net cash used in operating activities	\$ (14,310)	\$ (13,388)	\$ (922)	\$ (10,416)	\$ (14,310)	\$ 3,894
Net cash used in investing activities	(11)	(56)	45	(29)	(11)	(18)
Net cash provided by financing activities	17,869	21,126	(3,257)	1,077	17,869	(16,792)
Effect of foreign exchange rate changes on cash	(4)	(8)	4	1	(4)	5
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	\$ 3,544	\$ 7,674	\$ (4,130)			
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents				\$ (9,367)	\$ 3,544	\$ (12,911)

#### **Net Cash used in Operating Activities**

The **higher lower** level of cash used in operating activities in **2022 2023** primarily resulted from decreases **related to operating assets** in selling, general and **liabilities**. The \$4.0 million decrease in net loss for the year ended December 31, 2022 **administrative expenses and research and development expenses** as compared **with the year ended December 31, 2021** was largely offset by an aggregate \$3.5 million net decrease **related to noncash adjustments**. **2022**.

#### **Net Cash Used in Investing Activities**

Our investing activities are primarily related to the purchase of property and equipment.

#### **Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities**

During the year ended December 31, 2023, we received net proceeds of \$0.4 million from the issuance and sale of shares under the ATM. In addition, we received \$0.6 million in net proceeds from the exercise of warrants. During the year ended December 31, 2022, we received net cash used in investing activities was net proceeds of \$6 thousand in proceeds \$17.9 million from the sale of furniture and equipment. shares primarily from our August

**5860**

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### **Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities**

Net cash provided by financing activities are primarily related 2022 public offering and to the net proceeds a lesser extent from the equity offerings discussed above and sale of shares to Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC, as described in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements.

#### **Cash Requirements**

Our ability to generate product revenues sufficient to achieve profitability will depend heavily on the successful commercialization of PoNS Therapy in the U.S. Our net loss was \$14.1 million \$8.9 million and \$18.1 million \$14.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, respectively. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we had an accumulated deficit of \$151.1 million \$160.0 million. We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and operating losses for the foreseeable future. These and other factors indicate substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. Refer to Note 1 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for additional discussion about our going concern uncertainty.

We intend to use our available capital resources primarily to expand our U.S. commercialization efforts, fund manufacturing activities for the PoNS device, conduct clinical trials and for working capital and general corporate purposes. We believe that our existing capital resources, including the \$1.3 million of additional net proceeds from the August 2022 Public Offering, ATM in 2024 through the date of this filing, will be sufficient to fund our operations through 2023, the second quarter of 2024, but we will be required to seek additional funding through the sale of equity or debt financing to continue to fund our operations thereafter. We will need additional funding for our planned clinical trial for stroke. The amount required to fund operations thereafter will depend on various factors, including timing of approval of clinical trials, duration and result of clinical trials and other factors that affect the cost of the clinical trial, manufacturing costs of product, development of our product for new indications and demand for our authorized products in the market.

There can be no assurance that we will be successful in raising additional capital or that such capital, if available, will be on terms that are acceptable to us. If we are unable to raise sufficient additional capital, we may be compelled to reduce the scope of our operations and planned capital expenditure or sell certain assets, including intellectual property, and we may be forced to cease or wind down operations, seek protection under the provisions of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code, or liquidate and dissolve our company.

#### **Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

Our discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations are based upon our financial statements that have been prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. This preparation requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses, and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. U.S. GAAP provides the framework from which to make these estimates, assumption and disclosures. We choose accounting policies within U.S. GAAP that management believes are appropriate to accurately and fairly report our operating results and financial position in a consistent manner. Management regularly assesses these policies in light of current and forecasted economic conditions. Actual results could differ from those estimates made by management. While there are a number of significant accounting policies affecting our financial statements, we believe the critical accounting policies involving the most complex, difficult and subjective estimates and judgments are: revenue recognition, stock-based compensation, derivative financial instruments and accounting for warrants.

#### **Revenue Recognition**

We recognize revenue when control of the promised goods is transferred to the customer in an amount that reflects the consideration to which we expect to be entitled in exchange for those products.

We generate The Company generates nearly all of our its revenue from product sales directly to patients, its e-commerce partner in the United States and to clinics in Canada. Revenue from product sales is recognized at a point in time when as the performance obligation is satisfied upon delivery of and when the product customer obtains control at the established transaction price. Taxes that we collect the Company collects concurrent with revenue-producing activities are excluded from revenue.

59

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

We require The Company requires some customers in the United States to prepay the full product selling price, net of cash discount, prior to shipment. We record The Company records a contract liability for any customer prepayment received for which delivery had not yet occurred as of the end of the period.

61

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### **Stock-Based Compensation**

We account for all stock-based payments and awards under the fair value-based method. We recognize our stock-based compensation expense using the straight-line method. Compensation cost is not adjusted for estimated forfeitures, but instead is adjusted upon an actual forfeiture of a stock option.

We account for the granting of stock options using the fair value method whereby all awards are measured at fair value on the date of the grant. The fair value of stock options is expensed over the requisite service period with a corresponding increase to additional paid-in capital. Upon exercise of stock options, the consideration paid by the option holder, together with the amount previously recognized in additional paid-in capital is recorded as an increase to common stock, while the par value of the shares received is reclassified from additional paid in capital. Stock options granted to employees are accounted for as liabilities when they contain conditions or other features that are indexed to other than a market, performance or service conditions.

We use the Black-Scholes option-pricing model to calculate the fair value of stock options. The use of the Black-Scholes option-pricing model requires management to make assumptions with respect to the expected term of the option, the expected volatility of the common stock

consistent with the expected term of the option, risk-free interest rates, the value of the common stock and expected dividend yield of the common stock. Changes in these assumptions can materially affect the fair value estimate.

#### ***Derivative Financial Instruments***

We evaluate our financial instruments and other contracts to determine if those contracts or embedded components of those contracts qualify as derivatives to be separately accounted for in accordance with ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging. The result of this accounting treatment is that the fair value of the derivative is re-measured at each balance sheet date and recorded as a liability or asset and the change in fair value is recorded in the consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss. Upon settlement of a derivative financial instrument, the instrument is re-measured at the settlement date and then that fair value of the underlying instrument is reclassified to equity.

The classification of derivative financial instruments, including whether such instruments should be recorded as liabilities/assets or as equity, is reassessed at the end of each reporting period. Derivative financial instruments that become subject to reclassification are reclassified at the fair value of the instrument on the reclassification date. Derivative financial instrument liabilities are classified in the consolidated balance sheet as current if the right to exercise or settle the derivative financial instrument lies with the holder.

We use the Monte Carlo and Black-Scholes option-pricing models to value derivative financial instrument liabilities. This model uses Level 3 inputs in the fair value hierarchy established by ASC 820 - Fair Value Measurement.

As of **December 31, 2022** December 31, 2023, our derivative financial instruments accounted for in accordance with ASC 815 were comprised of warrants issued in connection with August 2022 Public Offering.

#### ***Accounting for Warrants***

We have issued and may continue to issue warrants to purchase shares of common stock through our public and private offerings. We account for such warrants in accordance with ASC 480 Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity, which identifies three categories of freestanding financial instruments that are required to be accounted for as a liability. If determined to be classified as a liability, we will remeasure the fair value of the warrants at each balance sheet date. If determined to be classified as equity, the fair value of the warrants will be measured as of the date of issuance and will not be subject to remeasurement at each balance sheet date.

**60**

---

#### **Table of Contents**

The fair value of the warrants is estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model, based on the market value of the underlying common stock at the measurement dates, the contractual terms of the warrants, risk-free interest rates and expected volatility of the price of the underlying common stock. There are no expected dividends.

**62**

---

#### **Table of Contents**

#### ***Income Taxes***

We account for income taxes using the asset and liability method. The asset and liability method provide that deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the expected future tax consequences of temporary differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities, and for operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using the currently enacted tax

rates and laws that will be in effect when the differences are expected to reverse. We record a valuation allowance to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount that is believed more likely than not to be realized.

We have adopted the provisions of ASC 740 Income Taxes regarding accounting for uncertainty in income taxes. We initially recognize tax positions in the financial statements when it is more likely than not the position will be sustained upon examination by the tax authorities. Such tax positions are initially and subsequently measured as the largest amount of the tax benefit that is greater than 50% likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement with the tax authority, assuming full knowledge of the position and all relevant facts. Application requires numerous estimates based on available information. We consider many factors when evaluating and estimating its tax positions and tax benefits. These periodic adjustments may have a material impact on the consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss. When applicable, we classify penalties and interest associated with uncertain tax positions as a component of income tax expense in its consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss.

#### ***Going Concern***

Because we have generated limited revenues from commercialization, our operations to date have been principally financed through public and private offerings of our common stock and convertible debt and exercises of options and warrants. There are a number of conditions that we must satisfy before we will be able to generate sufficient revenue to fund our operations, including but not limited to the successful commercialization of the PoNS device in the U.S.

These factors raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern through at least 12 months from the date of this **Annual Report**. **Form 10-K**. While we had **\$14.5 million** **\$5.2 million** of cash as of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, we do not currently have sufficient resources to accomplish all of the above conditions necessary for us to generate sufficient revenues to achieve profitability, and we expect that we will require additional financing to continue to fund our operations. There is no guarantee that such funding will be available at all or in sufficient amounts to satisfy our required expenditures. In reviewing this filing, you should carefully consider this uncertainty, the risks described in the section entitled "Item 1A. Risk Factors" and other risks described throughout this **Annual Report**. **Form 10-K**.

#### **Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements**

Information regarding recently issued accounting pronouncements is included in Note 2 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

#### **ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

Not applicable.

#### **ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA**

The information required by this item is included in this Form 10-K beginning on page F-1 and is incorporated herein by reference.

---

61

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### **ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE**

None.

---

63

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

**ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES****Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

As required by Rule 13a-15(b) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, under the direction of the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, we have evaluated our disclosure controls and procedures as defined in Rule 13a-15(e) or 15d-15(e) as of the end of the period covered by this Form 10-K. Based on this evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of the end of the period covered by this Form 10-K.

**Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

We are responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal controls over financial reporting. Our management assessed the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting as of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**. In making this assessment, our management used the criteria described in Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013), issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission and assessed the applicability of the principles within each component of internal control and determined whether or not they have been adequately addressed within the current system of internal control and adequately documented. Based on this assessment, management, under the supervision and with the participation of our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, concluded that, as of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, our internal control over financial reporting was effective.

This Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of our independent registered public accounting firm regarding internal control over financial reporting as required by Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes Oxley Act of 2002. As a non-accelerated filer, our management's report was not subject to attestation by our registered public accounting firm pursuant to rules of the SEC that permit us to provide only management's report in this Form 10-K.

**Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

We monitor our internal control over financial reporting on a continuous basis. There has not been any change in our internal control over financial reporting identified in connection with the evaluation required by Rule 13a-15(d) and 15d-15(d) under the Exchange Act that occurred during the **quarter** **year** ended December 31, **2022** **2023** which has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

**ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION**

None.

**ITEM 9C. DISCLOSURE REGARDING FOREIGN JURISDICTIONS THAT PREVENT INSPECTIONS**

Not applicable.

**6264**

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**PART III**

We will file a definitive Proxy Statement for our 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the "2023 Proxy Statement") with the SEC, pursuant to Regulation 14A, not later than 120 days after the end of our fiscal year. Accordingly, certain information required by Part III has been omitted under General Instruction G(3) to Form 10-K. Only those sections of the 2022 Proxy Statement that specifically address the items set forth herein are incorporated by reference.

## ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

### Directors and Executive Officers

The following table sets forth information required by Item 10 as to each person who is, hereby incorporated by reference to the sections as of the 2023 Proxy Statement filing hereof, a director and/or executive officer of the Company. Officers are appointed by our Board of Directors and serve at the discretion of our Board of Directors, subject to applicable employment agreements:

Name	Position(s)	Age
Blane Walter	Chairman	53
Dane C. Andreeff	Director, Chief Executive Officer and President	58
Jeffrey S. Mathiesen	Director, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary	63
Antonella Favit-Van Pelt, Ph.D.	Chief Medical Officer	57
Paul Buckman	Director	68
Sherrie Perkins	Director	69
Edward M. Straw	Director	85

### No Family Relationships

There is no family relationship between any director and executive officer or among any directors or executive officers.

### Business Experience and Background of Directors and Executive Officers

**Blane Walter** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since December 2015 and as Chairman of the Board since August 2020. Mr. Walter is a partner at Talisman Capital Partners, a position he has held since 2011. In 1999, Mr. Walter founded inChord Communications, Inc., a global private healthcare communications company, which was acquired by inVentiv Health in 2005. Mr. Walter joined inVentiv Health as president of the Communications division in 2005 and was named Chief Executive Officer in 2008 and served in that capacity until leading the sale of the company to Thomas H. Lee Partners in 2010. Following the buyout, Mr. Walter served as vice chairman of inVentiv Group, a holding company which survived the buyout, from 2011 to August 2017. Mr. Walter received a B.S. in marketing and finance from Boston College in 1993. Our Board believes that Mr. Walter is qualified to serve as director based on his background in the healthcare and pharmaceutical industries.

**Dane C. Andreeff** served as our Interim President and Chief Executive Officer from August 2020 until June 2021 when he was appointed President and Chief Executive Officer. He has served as a member of our Board of Directors since August 2017. Mr. Andreeff is the General Partner and Portfolio Manager at Maple Leaf Partners, LP. Maple Leaf Partners, LP is a hedge fund founded by Mr. Andreeff, where he has been employed since 1996. In 2003, the fund was seeded by Julian Robertson's Tiger Management and later grew to over \$2 billion in assets under management. Mr. Andreeff also serves as a member of the captions "Information Regarding board of directors of privately-held HDL Therapeutics, Inc. and Myocardial Solutions, Ltd. Mr. Andreeff received his Bachelor's degree in Economics from the University of Texas at Arlington in 1989 and his Master's degree in Economics from the University of Texas at Arlington in 1991. Our Board believes that Mr. Andreeff's extensive experience in the investment industry and capital markets and significant experience advising other companies as a board member, including multiple companies in the healthcare sector, make him a valuable member of the Board.

**Jeffrey S. Mathiesen** has served as Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary of the Company since June 2021. Mr. Mathiesen also has served as a member of the Board of Directors since May 2022 and Corporate Governance," "Proposal 1 - Election previously served as a member of our Board of Directors from June 2020 to June 2021. Additionally, Mr. Mathiesen has served as Vice Chair and Lead Independent Director since March 2020 and as Director and Audit Committee Chair, since 2015, of Panbela Therapeutics, Inc. (Nasdaq: PBLA), a publicly traded biopharmaceutical company developing therapies for pancreatic diseases, and as a director and Audit Committee Chair of NeuroOne Medical Technologies Corporation (Nasdaq: NMTC), a publicly traded medical technology company focused on improving surgical care options and outcomes for

patients suffering from neurological disorders, since 2017, and Healthcare Triangle, Inc. (Nasdaq: HCTI), a publicly traded provider of cloud and data transformation platform and solutions for healthcare and life sciences, from March 2021 to December 2021, and eNeura, Inc., a privately held medical technology company providing therapy for both acute treatment and prevention of migraine, from 2018 to 2020. Mr. Mathiesen served as Advisor to the CEO of Teewinot Life Sciences Corporation, a privately held global leader in the biosynthetic development and production of cannabinoids and their derivatives for consumer and pharmaceutical products, from October 2019 to December 2019, and served as Chief Financial Officer from March 2019 to October 2019. In August 2020, Teewinot Life Insurance Sciences filed a voluntary petition under Chapter 11 of the United States Bankruptcy Code. Mr. Mathiesen previously served as Chief Financial Officer of Gemphire Therapeutics Inc., which was acquired by NeuroBo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Nasdaq: NRBO) in January 2020, a publicly-held clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company developing therapies for patients with cardiometabolic disorders, from 2015 to 2018, and as Chief Financial Officer of Sunshine Heart, Inc. (Nasdaq: CHFS), a publicly-held early-stage medical device company, from 2011 to 2015. Mr. Mathiesen received a B.S. in Accounting from the University of South Dakota and is a Certified Public Accountant. Our Board believes that Mr. Mathiesen is qualified to serve as a director based on his background in a broad range of responsibilities in financial and operational roles, including manufacturing, quality and procurement, in addition to traditional CFO roles in organizations with operations in North America, Europe, Southeast Asia and Australia.

**Antonella Favit-Van Pelt, Ph.D.** has served as Chief Medical Officer of the Company since July 2021. Prior to joining the Company, Dr. Favit-Van Pelt led U.S. Medical Strategy for the Neurology program of H. Lundbeck A/S (LUN.CO, LUN DC, HLUYY), a global pharmaceutical company that specializes in the treatment of brain diseases, from 2018 to 2021. In this position, she oversaw the U.S. medical and life-cycle program activities related to therapies for movement disorders and epilepsy. In 2013, Dr. Favit-Van Pelt founded Synaerion Therapeutics ("Synaerion" "Executive Officers") and, in 2016, its affiliate Thera Neuropharma, Inc. ("Thera"), two privately-held biotechnology companies developing a small molecule regenerative therapy and RNAi-based integrated technology platform for ALS and traumatic brain injury. She oversaw all aspects of Synaerion's and Thera's management and strategy as Chief Executive Officer, President & Chairwoman of the Board from 2014 to 2017 and she continues to serve as President & Chairwoman. In 2009, she founded StratMedica, LLC, a privately-held company designed to provide corporate clients with contract senior management support. As Principal of StratMedica from 2009 to 2016, she directed clinical development and medical programs for eight healthcare companies, including Johnson & Johnson (NYSE: JNJ) and Teva (NYSE: TEVA). Dr. Favit-Van Pelt served as Senior Director and Global Medical Lead at Shire Pharmaceuticals (Nasdaq: SPHG) from 2007 to 2008, as Director of Medical Strategy at Bristol-Myers Squibb (NYSE: BMY) from 2005 to 2007, and as Global Clinical Development Lead at GE Healthcare (formerly Amersham Health) from 2001 to 2005. Dr. Favit-Van Pelt is a Board-certified neurologist who began clinical practice activity in 1994, with a focus on patients with rare neuromuscular disorders. She holds a graduate degree in Medicine and Surgery and a Ph.D. in Pharmacology from the School of Medicine and Surgery at the University of Catania, Italy.

**Paul Buckman** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since September 2021. Mr. Buckman has served as the President of North America for LivaNova PLC (Nasdaq: LIVN) since April 2019 and previously served as the General Manager of Structural Heart for LivaNova PLC from April 2017 to December 2019. Prior to joining LivaNova PLC, Mr. Buckman served as chief executive officer of Conventus Orthopaedics, a Minnesota-based company specializing in peri-articular bone fracture fixation, from September 2013 until March of 2017. Mr. Buckman was chief executive officer of Sentreheart, Inc., a medical technology company focused on closure of various anatomic structures, from February 2012 to September 2013. Previously, Mr. Buckman served as chief executive officer and chairman of Pathway Medical Technologies, Inc., a medical device company focused on treatment of peripheral arterial disease, from September 2008 to February 2012; as chief executive officer of Devax, Inc., a developer and manufacturer of drug eluting stents, from December 2006 to September 2008; as president of the cardiology division of St. Jude Medical, Inc., a publicly traded diversified medical products company, from August 2004 to December 2006; and as chairman of the board of directors and chief executive officer of ev3, LLC, a Minnesota-based medical device company focused on endovascular therapies that Mr. Buckman founded and developed into an \$80 million business, from January 2001 to January 2004. Mr. Buckman has worked in the medical device industry for over 30 years, including 10 years at Scimed Life Systems, Inc. and Boston Scientific Corporation (NYSE: BSX), a publicly traded medical device manufacturer, where he held several executive positions before becoming president of the cardiology division of Boston Scientific in January 2000. Mr. Buckman also currently serves as a director for Ablative Solutions, Inc., ActivOrtho, Shoulder Innovations, and as chairman of Miromatrix, Inc. and NeuroOne Medical Technologies Corporation (Nasdaq: NMTC). He previously served

as a director of Conventus Orthopaedics, Caisson Interventional LLC, Velocimed, Inc., where he was a co-founder, EndiCor, Inc., Microvena, Inc., Sunshine Heart, Inc., n/k/a Nuwellis, Inc. (Nasdaq: NUWE), a publicly-held early-stage medical device company, NexGen Medical, Micro Therapeutics, Inc., and "Delinquent Section 16(a) Reports" as chairman of the board of NeuroOne, Inc. Our Board believes that Mr. Buckman is qualified to serve as director based on his background in the healthcare and pharmaceutical industries.

**Sherrie Perkins** has served as a member of our Board of Directors since March 2021. Ms. Perkins has served in the University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center's Venture Mentoring Service since 2017 providing guidance and perspective on commercialization-related topics that are important and relevant to the progression of various ventures. Ms. Perkins also served as an independent member of the board of directors of eNeura, Inc., a privately held medical technology company providing therapy for both acute treatment and prevention of migraines, from 2018 to 2020. Ms. Perkins served as a consultant to LivaNova, PLC (Nasdaq: LIVN), a publicly-held global medical technology company that creates innovative and meaningful medical solutions for the benefit of patients, healthcare professionals, and healthcare systems, from January 2017 to June 2019, and served as Vice President in the sleep apnea, new ventures space within LivaNova from October 2015 to January 2017. Ms. Perkins previously served as Vice President of Marketing and New Business Development of Cyberonics, Inc., an affiliate of LivaNova, from November 2011 to October 2015. Ms. Perkins received a B.S. in Medical Technology from Mississippi State University and an M.A. in Management from Central Michigan University. Since June 2021, Ms. Perkins has served as an adjunct professor in the Master of Clinical Translation Management program in The Cameron School of Business at University of St. Thomas. Our Board believes that Ms. Perkins is qualified to serve as director based on her background and broad range of responsibilities in financial and operational roles, including marketing, business development and commercialization.

**Edward M. Straw** is a Vice Admiral, USN, (Retired) and has served as a member of our Board of Directors since November 2014. He founded Osprey Venture Partners in 2011, a firm that mentors young entrepreneurs seeking investment capital and assists with business development and serves as the managing director. Previously he was president, global operations of The Estée Lauder Companies from 2000 to 2005, senior vice president global operations of the Compaq Computer Corporation from 1998 to 2000, and president of Ryder Integrated Logistics from 1996 to 1998. Prior to joining the private sector, he had a distinguished 35-year career in the U.S. Navy and retired as a three-star admiral. During his military service, Vice Admiral Straw was Director (CEO) of the Defense Logistics Agency, the largest military logistics command supporting the American armed forces. He is a former member of the Defense Science Board, is lead independent director/and former Chairman of Odyssey Logistics and currently sits on the boards of The Boston Consulting Federal Group (lead independent director), and Academy Securities. He is a former board member of Eddie Bauer (audit committee), MeadWestvaco (audit committee), Ply Gem Industries and Panther Logistics. Vice Admiral Straw received a B.S. degree from the United States Naval Academy, an MBA from The George Washington University, and is a graduate of the National War College. Our Board believes that Vice Admiral Straw is qualified to serve as a director based on his extensive leadership experience in both the private sector and the U.S. military.

#### **Board and Committee Information**

During the Company's fiscal year ended December 31, 2023, the Board held a total of five meetings, and each director attended at least 75% or more of the aggregate number of meetings of the Board and of the committees on which he or she served that were held during a portion of the last fiscal year.

#### **Board Leadership Structure**

The Company's Board of Directors is currently chaired by Blane Walter, an independent member of the Board. The Board does not have a formal policy with respect to the separation of the offices of Chief Executive Officer and Chair of the Board. It is the Board's view that rather than having a formal policy, the Board, upon consideration of all relevant factors and circumstances, will determine, as and when appropriate, whether it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders for such offices to be separate or combined. The Board currently believes that, by separating the positions of Chair of the Board and Chief Executive Officer, the Board can provide significant leadership to management and strong oversight of key opportunities and risks impacting the Company.

The Company's Board of Directors plays an active role in overseeing management of our risks. The Board regularly reviews information regarding the Company's strategy, liquidity and operations, as well as the risks associated with each. The Audit Committee of the Board is responsible for overseeing the management of financial risks. The Compensation Committee is responsible for overseeing the management of risks relating to the Company's executive compensation policies and arrangements, and for managing risks relating to the Company's director compensation policies and arrangements. The Company's Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is responsible for reviewing the independence of the Board and other corporate governance matters.

#### **Board Committees**

The Company's Board of Directors has three standing committees: an Audit Committee, a Compensation Committee and a Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. The following table provides current committee membership:

Name	Audit Committee	Compensation Committee	Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee
Paul Buckman	X*	X	X
Edward M. Straw	X	X*	X
Blane Walter	X		
Sherrie Perkins		X	X*

\*Committee Chairperson

Below is a description of each committee of the Board of Directors. Each of the committees has authority to engage legal counsel or other experts or consultants, as it deems appropriate to carry out its responsibilities.

#### **Audit Committee**

Our Audit Committee is comprised of Messrs. Buckman, Straw and Walter. Mr. Buckman is the chair of the Audit Committee. The Board of Directors has also determined that each of Mr. Buckman and Mr. Walter qualifies as an "audit committee financial expert," as defined in applicable SEC rules. The Board made a qualitative assessment of Mr. Buckman's and Mr. Walter's level of knowledge and experience based on a number of factors.

The Audit Committee was established in accordance with Section 3(a)(58)(A) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), to oversee the Company's corporate accounting and financial reporting processes and audits of its financial statements.

For this purpose, the Audit Committee performs several functions including the following:

- evaluating the performance of and assessing the qualifications of the independent auditors;
- determining and approving the engagement of the independent auditors;
- determining whether to retain or terminate the existing independent auditors or to appoint and engage new independent auditors;
- reviewing and approving the retention of the independent auditors to perform any proposed permissible non-audit services;
- monitoring the rotation of partners of the independent auditors on the Company's audit engagement team as required by law;

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

- reviewing and approving or rejecting transactions between the Company and any related persons;
- conferring with management and the independent auditors regarding the scope, adequacy and effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting;

- establishing procedures, as required under applicable law, for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by the Company regarding accounting, internal controls or auditing matters and the confidential and anonymous submission by employees of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters; and
- meeting to review the Company's annual audited financial statements and quarterly financial statements with management and the independent auditor.

The Audit Committee met four times during 2023. The Board has adopted a written Audit Committee charter that is available to stockholders on the Company's website at [www.heliusmedical.com](http://www.heliusmedical.com).

The Board of Directors reviews the definition of independence for Audit Committee members under SEC rules and Nasdaq listing standards on an annual basis and has determined that all members of the Company's Audit Committee are independent for such purposes.

#### **Compensation Committee**

Our Compensation Committee is comprised of Messrs. Buckman, Straw and Ms. Perkins. Mr. Straw is the chair of the Compensation Committee.

The Compensation Committee was established in March 2018. All members of the Company's Compensation Committee are independent (as independence is currently defined in Rule 5605(d)(2) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules). The Compensation Committee met one time during 2023. The Board has adopted a written Compensation Committee charter that is available to stockholders on the Company's website at [www.heliusmedical.com](http://www.heliusmedical.com).

The Compensation Committee acts on behalf of the Board to do the following:

- reviewing, recommending for adoption and overseeing the Company's compensation strategy, policies, plans and programs, including establishing corporate and individual performance objectives relevant to the compensation of the Company's executive officers and other senior management and evaluation of performance in light of these stated objectives;
- reviewing and recommending to the Board for approval the compensation and other terms of employment or service, including severance and change-in-control arrangements, of the Company's Chief Executive Officer, the other executive officers and the directors;
- administering and enforcing the Company's Clawback Policy; and
- administering the Company's equity compensation plans, pension and profit-sharing plans, deferred compensation plans and other similar plans and programs.

#### **Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee**

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is currently comprised of Messrs. Buckman, Straw and Ms. Perkins. Ms. Perkins is the chair of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee was established in March 2018. All members of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee are independent (as independence is currently defined in Rule 5605(a)(2) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules). The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee did not meet during 2023, but approved

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

certain matters via written consent. The Board has adopted a written Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee charter that is available to stockholders on the Company's website at [www.heliusmedical.com](http://www.heliusmedical.com).

The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee is responsible for the following:

- identifying, reviewing and evaluating candidates to serve as directors of the Company (consistent with criteria approved by the Board);
- reviewing and evaluating incumbent directors;

- selecting or recommending to the Board for selection candidates for election to the Board of Directors;
- making recommendations to the Board regarding the membership of the committees of the Board;
- assessing the performance of management and the Board; and
- developing a set of corporate governance principles for the Company.

***Code of Business Conduct and Ethics***

The Company has adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to all officers, directors and employees. The Code of Business Conduct and Ethics is available on the Company's website at [www.heliusmedical.com](http://www.heliusmedical.com). If the Company makes any substantive amendments to the Code of Business Conduct and Ethics or grants any waiver from a provision of the Code of Business Conduct and Ethics to any executive officer or director, the Company will promptly disclose the nature of the amendment or waiver on its website.

***Hedging Policy***

The Company's Insider Trading Policy is designed to create reasonable processes to prevent the Company and its directors, officers, employees and specified other persons from insider trading and any appearance of improper conduct. Our Insider Trading Policy specifically prohibits, among other things, all directors and executive officers and employees of the Company from effecting hedging or monetization transactions, such as zero-cost collars and forward sale contracts.

***Policy for the Recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation***

As required by the listing standards adopted by Nasdaq as a result of SEC rulemaking, the Company's Board of Directors recently adopted a new Policy for the Recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation. The policy provides that the Company must promptly recover specified incentive-based compensation that is received by our Section 16 officers on or after October 2, 2023, regardless of fault or misconduct, upon specified accounting restatements of the Company's financial statement that resulted in such persons receiving an amount that exceeded the amount that would have been received if based on the restated financial statements. There are limited exceptions to the recovery requirement as set forth in the listing standards. Incentive-based compensation is defined as any compensation that is granted, earned, or vested based wholly or in part upon the attainment of a financial reporting measure. The subject compensation will be determined without regard to any net settlement of, or taxes paid or payable or withheld on, such compensation, but there will not be any duplicative recovery by the Company. As specified in the listing standards, the Company cannot indemnify, or pay or reimburse for insurance for, a Section 16 officer for recoveries under this policy.

The recovery period under the policy is three full years preceding the date our Board or a committee thereof as directed by the Board concludes, or reasonably should have concluded, that an accounting restatement is required. If applicable, the Company will provide the current or former Section 16 officer with a written demand for repayment or return and the method thereof. If such repayment or return is not made when due, the policy provides that the Company will take all reasonable and appropriate actions to recover such erroneously awarded compensation from such person.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION**

The following tables and accompanying narrative disclosure discuss the compensation awarded to, earned by, or paid to:

- Dane C. Andreeff, our President and Chief Executive Officer;
- Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, our Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary; and
- Antonella Favit-Van Pelt, our Chief Medical Officer.

We refer to these three executive officers as the "named executive officers" (as determined pursuant to the SEC's disclosure requirements for executive compensation in Item 402 of Regulation S-K). The following table presents summary information regarding the total compensation for services rendered in all capacities that was earned by the Company's named executive officers during the fiscal years ended December 31, 2023 and 2022.

Name and Principal Position	Year	Non-Equity					
		Salary	Option Awards	Stock Awards	Incentive Plan Compensation	All Other Compensation	Total
		(\$)	(\$)(1)	(\$)(1)	(\$)	(\$)(2)	(\$)
<b>Dane C. Andreeff</b> <i>President and Chief Executive Officer</i>	2023	386,000	1,115,469	—	96,500	37,257	1,635,226
<b>Jeffrey S. Mathiesen</b> <i>Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary</i>	2023	370,000	579,803	—	74,000	34,642	1,058,445
<b>Antonella Favit-Van Pelt</b> <i>Chief Medical Officer</i>	2023	375,000	314,984	—	65,625	30,935	786,544
	2022	357,000	93,886	—	62,475	13,190	526,206

(1) The amounts reflect the full grant date fair value for awards granted during the indicated year. The grant date fair value was computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, Compensation-Stock Compensation. The assumptions we used in valuing options are described in Note 9 to our audited financial statements included in this Form 10-K.

(2) The table below details the amounts reported as all other compensation for 2023 include \$23,412 in health benefits and \$19,300 in 401(k) contributions for Dane C. Andreeff, \$20,451 in health benefits and \$30,000 in 401(k) contributions for Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, and \$17,089 in health benefits and \$18,750 in 401(k) contributions for Antonella Favit-Van Pelt along with life insurance premiums for each of the NEOs.

#### Narrative to Summary Compensation Table

The compensation program for the Company's named executive officers for 2023 had three primary components: base salary, annual bonus and equity grants.

##### Annual Base Salary

We have entered into employment agreements with each of our named executive officers that establish annual base salaries, which are reviewed periodically by our Compensation Committee in order to compensate our named executive officers for the satisfactory performance of duties to the Company. Annual base salaries are intended to provide a fixed component of compensation to our named executive officers, reflecting their skill sets, experience, roles and responsibilities. Base salaries for our named executive officers have generally been set at levels deemed necessary to attract and retain individuals with superior talent. On February 14, 2023, our Compensation Committee, in consultation with an independent compensation consultant, Grant Thornton LLP, approved a 5% increase to the base salaries of our executive officers for 2023 as an adjustment to account for cost of living increases.

---

#### Table of Contents

**Mr. Andreeff.** Pursuant to the Interim President and CEO Employment Letter Agreement entered into with Mr. Andreeff on August 23, 2020, Mr. Andreeff elected to take no additional compensation in return for his service as Interim President and Chief Executive Officer. Additionally, since he was not a member of any Board committees, Mr. Andreeff was not eligible for any additional cash retainer in respect of committee membership in 2022. Effective with his appointment as President and Chief Executive Officer on June 14, 2021, the Company entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Andreeff that provides for an annual base salary of \$350,000 subject to annual review by the Compensation Committee. As a result of our Compensation Committee's decision to increase our executive officers' salaries by 5% to account for increases in cost of living, Mr. Andreeff's annual base salary for 2023 was \$386,000.

**Mr. Mathiesen.** Effective with his appointment as Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary on June 14, 2021, the Company entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Mathiesen that provides for an annual base salary of \$335,000, subject to annual review by the

Compensation Committee. As a result of our Compensation Committee's decision to increase our executive officers' salaries by 5% to account for increases in cost of living, Mr. Mathiesen's annual base salary for 2023 was \$370,000.

**Dr. Favit-Van Pelt.** Effective with her appointment as Chief Medical Officer on July 7, 2021, the Company entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Favit-Van Pelt that provides for an annual base salary of \$340,000, subject to annual review by the Compensation Committee. As a result of our Compensation Committee's decision to increase our executive officers' salaries by 5% to account for increases in cost of living, Ms. Favit-Van Pelt's annual base salary for 2023 was \$375,000.

#### ***Non-Equity Incentive Plan***

In 2023, each of the Company's named executive officers had a target bonus, set forth as a percentage of annual base salary. Pursuant to the employment agreements between the Company and Messrs. Andreeff and Mathiesen, target bonuses for Messrs. Andreeff and Mathiesen were set at 50% and 40%, respectively, with the Compensation Committee able to determine that a portion of such target be paid in equity in lieu of cash. Under the employment agreement between the Company and Dr. Favit-Van Pelt, her target bonus was set at 35%.

In February 2023, the Compensation Committee recommended, and the Board approved, performance targets for fiscal 2023 that it would consider in approving bonus payments for 2023. These targets included various corporate objectives related to company revenue goals, financing goals, clinical research and development goals, and a goal related to the transition of the Company's manufacturer.

In February 2024, the Compensation Committee determined that 50% of the performance targets had been met, and approved the bonus payments to Mr. Andreeff, Mr. Mathiesen, and Dr. Favit-Van Pelt at 50% of their respective targets.

#### **Equity-Based Awards**

##### ***Stock Options***

Our equity-based incentive awards which are mainly comprised of stock options are designed to align our interests with those of our employees and consultants, including our named executive officers. Our Compensation Committee has responsibility for granting equity-based incentive awards to our named executive officers. Vesting of equity awards is generally tied to continuous service with us and serves as an additional retention measure. Our executives generally are awarded an initial new hire grant upon commencement of employment. Additional grants may occur periodically in order to specifically incentivize executives with respect to achieving certain corporate goals or to reward executives for exceptional performance.

On February 14, 2023, our Board, upon recommendation of the Compensation Committee, approved the grant of an option to purchase 5,181,000 shares of Common Stock to Mr. Andreeff, an option to purchase 2,693,000 shares of Common Stock to Mr. Mathiesen, and an option to purchase 1,463,000 shares of common stock to Ms. Favit-Van Pelt pursuant to the Company's 2022 Equity Incentive Plan (the "2022 Plan"). Each of these stock options has an exercise price equal to the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as of the grant date, as determined in accordance with our 2022 Plan. Each of stock options granted to Messrs. Andreeff and Mathiesen and Ms. Favit-Van Pelt, respectively,

---

#### **Table of Contents**

vest in a series of twelve successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on March 31, 2023.

#### ***Retirement Benefits and Other Compensation***

Our named executive officers do not participate in, or otherwise receive any benefits under, any pension or deferred compensation plan sponsored by us. We provide our employees a percentage match to the contributions made by our employees to the Company's 401(k) savings plan and we provide life insurance benefits to our named executive officers. Our named executive officers were eligible to participate in

our employee benefits, including health benefits, on the same basis as our other employees. We generally do not provide perquisites or personal benefits except in limited circumstances.

***Employment Agreement and Arrangements (including Payments upon Termination or Change in Control)***

The following is a description of our current executive employment agreements:

***Dane C. Andreeff***

In connection with the Company's appointment of Mr. Andreeff as President and Chief Executive Officer on June 14, 2021, the Company entered into an Employment Agreement with Mr. Andreeff (the "***Andreeff Employment Agreement***"). The Andreeff Employment Agreement has an initial term of three years beginning on June 14, 2021 and automatically renews for an additional one year period at the end of the initial term and each anniversary thereafter, provided that at least 90 days prior to the expiration of the initial term or any renewal term the Board does not notify Mr. Andreeff of its intention not to renew.

The Andreeff Employment Agreement entitles Mr. Andreeff to, among other benefits, the following compensation:

- An annual base salary of \$350,000, reviewed at least annually;
- An annual cash bonus in an amount of up to 50% of annual base salary; provided, that the Company may elect to pay up to 50% of any earned annual bonus in fully vested shares of common stock in lieu of cash;
- Participation in equity-based long-term incentive compensation plans generally available to senior executive officers of the Company;
- Participation in welfare benefit plans, practices, policies and programs (including, without limitation, medical, prescription, dental, disability, employee life, group life, accidental death and travel accident insurance plans and programs) made available to other senior executive officers of the Company;
- Prompt reimbursement for all reasonable expenses in accordance with the plans, practices, policies and programs of the Company; and
- 20 days of paid vacation, to be taken in accordance with the Company's policies and practices.

In the event that the Company consummates a transaction that constitutes a Change in Control (as defined in the Andreeff Employment Agreement), all of the unvested shares underlying Mr. Andreeff's options will fully vest and become exercisable immediately prior to the effectiveness of such Change in Control. In the event of Mr. Andreeff's death during the employment period or a termination due to disability, for cause by the Company or as a result of resignation without good reason, Mr. Andreeff or his beneficiaries or legal representatives will be provided any annual base salary earned, but unpaid, for services rendered to the Company on or prior to the date on which the employment period ends and the following additional other benefits under the Andreeff Employment Agreement (the "***Unconditional Entitlements***":

- All benefits payable to Mr. Andreeff under any employee benefit plans (including, without limitation any pension plans or 401(k) plans) of the Company or any of its affiliates applicable to Mr. Andreeff at the time of his

[Table of Contents](#)

termination of employment and all amounts and benefits (other than the Conditional Benefits) which are vested or which Mr. Andreeff is otherwise entitled to receive under the terms of any plan, policy, practice or program of, or any contract or agreement with, the Company, at or subsequent to the Termination Date without regard to the performance by Mr. Andreeff of further services or the resolution of a contingency, will be paid or provided according to the terms of such plans, as determined on the basis of the actual date of termination of Mr. Andreeff's employment with the Company;

- Any right which Mr. Andreeff may have to claim a defense and/or indemnity for liabilities to or claims asserted by third parties in connection with Mr. Andreeff's activities as an officer, director or employee of the Company shall be unaffected by Mr. Andreeff's termination of employment and shall remain in effect;
- Mr. Andreeff will be entitled to continuation of health care coverage as is required under, and in accordance with, applicable law or otherwise provided in accordance with the Company's policies;

- Mr. Andreeff will be entitled to reimbursement, in accordance with the Company's policies regarding expense reimbursement for all business expenses incurred prior to the Termination Date; and
- Except to the extent additional rights are provided upon Mr. Andreeff's qualifying to receive the Conditional Benefits (as defined in the Andreeff Employment Agreement), Mr. Andreeff's rights with respect to any stock option, restricted stock or other equity award granted by the Company will be governed by the terms and provisions of the applicable equity incentive plan, stock option award documents or grant agreement.

In the event of a resignation by Mr. Andreeff for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate his employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company's election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the initial term or any renewal term (not within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control), Mr. Andreeff will receive the Unconditional Entitlements and, subject to his signing and delivering to the Company and not revoking a general release of claims in favor of the Company and certain related parties, the Company shall provide Mr. Andreeff (i) a severance amount equal to the sum of his annual base salary as of the termination date and a pro-rated portion of his cash bonus for the year in which the termination occurs, (ii) Company-paid continued medical coverage for up to twelve months following such termination, and (iii) continued vesting of equity awards that would have vested if he had remained employed with the Company through the end of the then remaining portion of the initial term or the renewal term, as applicable (the "**Conditional Benefits**"). In the event of a resignation by Mr. Andreeff for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate his employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company's election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the initial term or any renewal term, in each case, within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control, Mr. Andreeff shall receive (i) the Unconditional Entitlements, (ii) 2.0 times the sum of his annual base salary and target cash bonus, (iii) accelerated vesting of all equity awards that were assumed, continued or substituted by the surviving or acquiring corporation in the Change in Control and remain subject to time-based vesting conditions, if any, and (iv) the Conditional Benefits except the severance amount provided in the Andreeff Employment Agreement. During employment and for the one year period after termination, Mr. Andreeff is subject to non-solicitation and non-competition obligations.

**Jeffrey S. Mathiesen**

In connection with the company's appointment of Mr. Mathiesen as Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer and Secretary on June 14, 2021, the Company entered into an Employment Agreement with Mr. Mathiesen (the "**Mathiesen Employment Agreement**"). The Mathiesen Employment Agreement has an initial term of three years beginning on June 14, 2021 and automatically renews for an additional one year period at the end of the initial term and each anniversary thereafter, provided that at least 90 days prior to the expiration of the initial term or any renewal term the Board does not notify Mr. Mathiesen of its intention not to renew.

The Employment Agreement entitles Mr. Mathiesen to, among other benefits, the following compensation:

- An annual base salary of \$335,000, reviewed at least annually;

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- An annual cash bonus in an amount of up to 40% of annual base salary, provided, that the Company may elect to pay up to 70% of any earned annual bonus in fully vested shares of common stock in lieu of cash;
- Participation in equity-based long-term incentive compensation plans generally available to senior executive officers of the Company;
- Participation in welfare benefit plans, practices, policies and programs (including, without limitation, medical, prescription, dental, disability, employee life, group life, accidental death and travel accident insurance plans and programs) made available to other senior executive officers of the Company;
- Prompt reimbursement for all reasonable expenses in accordance with the plans, practices, policies and programs of the Company; and
- 20 days of paid vacation, to be taken in accordance with the Company's policies and practices.

In the event that the Company consummates a transaction that constitutes a Change in Control (as defined in the Mathiesen Employment Agreement), all of the unvested shares underlying Mr. Mathiesen's options will fully vest and become exercisable immediately prior to the effectiveness of such Change in Control. In the event of Mr. Mathiesen's death during the employment period or a termination due to disability, for cause by the Company or as a result of resignation without good reason, Mr. Mathiesen or his beneficiaries or legal representatives will be provided any annual base salary earned, but unpaid, for services rendered to the Company on or prior to the date on which the employment period ends and the following additional other benefits under the Mathiesen Employment Agreement (the "**Unconditional Entitlements**"):

- All benefits payable to Mr. Mathiesen under any employee benefit plans (including, without limitation any pension plans or 401(k) plans) of the Company or any of its affiliates applicable to Mr. Mathiesen at the time of his termination of employment and all amounts and benefits (other than the Conditional Benefits (as defined in the Mathiesen Employment Agreement)) which are vested or which Mr. Mathiesen is otherwise entitled to receive under the terms of any plan, policy, practice or program of, or any contract or agreement with, the Company, at or subsequent to the termination date without regard to the performance by Mr. Mathiesen of further services or the resolution of a contingency, will be paid or provided according to the terms of such plans, as determined on the basis of the actual date of termination of Mr. Mathiesen's employment with the Company;
- Any right which Mr. Mathiesen may have to claim a defense and/or indemnity for liabilities to or claims asserted by third parties in connection with Mr. Mathiesen's activities as an officer, director or employee of the Company shall be unaffected by Mr. Mathiesen's termination of employment and shall remain in effect;
- Mr. Mathiesen will be entitled to continuation of health care coverage as is required under, and in accordance with, applicable law or otherwise provided in accordance with the Company's policies;
- Mr. Mathiesen will be entitled to reimbursement, in accordance with the Company's policies regarding expense reimbursement for all business expenses incurred prior to the Termination Date; and
- Except to the extent additional rights are provided upon Mr. Mathiesen's qualifying to receive the Conditional Benefits, Mr. Mathiesen's rights with respect to any stock option, restricted stock or other equity award granted by the Company will be governed by the terms and provisions of the applicable equity incentive plan, stock option award documents or grant agreement.

In the event of a resignation by Mr. Mathiesen for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate his employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company's election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the initial term or any renewal term (not within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control), Mr. Mathiesen will receive the Unconditional Entitlements and, subject to his signing and delivering to the Company and not revoking a general release of claims in favor of the Company and certain related parties, the Company shall provide Mr. Mathiesen (i) a severance amount equal to the sum of his annual base

[Table of Contents](#)

salary as of the termination date and a pro-rated portion of his cash bonus for the year in which the termination occurs, (ii) Company-paid continued medical coverage for up to twelve months following such termination, and (iii) continued vesting of equity awards that would have vested if he had remained employed with the Company through the end of the then remaining portion of the Initial Term or the Renewal Term, as applicable (the "**Conditional Benefits**"). In the event of a resignation by Mr. Mathiesen for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate his employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company's election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the Initial Term or any renewal term, in each case, within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control, Mr. Mathiesen shall receive (i) the Unconditional Entitlements, (ii) 1.5 times the sum of his annual base salary and target cash bonus, (iii) accelerated vesting of all equity awards that were assumed, continued or substituted by the surviving or acquiring corporation in the Change in Control and remain subject to time-based vesting conditions, if any, and (iv) the Conditional Benefits except the severance amount. During employment and for the one year period after termination, Mr. Mathiesen is subject to non-solicitation and non-competition requirements.

***Antonella Favit-Van Pelt, M.D., Ph.D.***

Effective with her appointment as Chief Medical Officer on July 7, 2021, Dr. Favit-Van Pelt and the Company entered into an employment agreement (the "**Favit-Van Pelt Employment Agreement**") with an initial term of three years beginning on July 7, 2021 and which

automatically renews for an additional one year period at the end of the initial term and each anniversary thereafter, provided that at least 90 days prior to the expiration of the initial term or any renewal term the Board does not notify Dr. Favit-Van Pelt of its intention not to renew.

The Favit-Van Pelt Employment Agreement entitles Dr. Favit-Van Pelt to, among other benefits, the following compensation:

- An annual base salary of \$340,000, reviewed at least annually;
- An annual cash bonus in an amount of up to 35% of annual base salary;
- Participation in equity-based long-term incentive compensation plans generally available to senior executive officers of the Company;
- Participation in welfare benefit plans, practices, policies and programs (including, without limitation, medical, prescription, dental, disability, employee life, group life, accidental death and travel accident insurance plans and programs) made available to other senior executive officers of the Company;
- Prompt reimbursement for all reasonable expenses in accordance with the plans, practices, policies and programs of the Company; and
- 20 days of paid vacation, to be taken in accordance with the Company's policies and practices.

In the event that the Company consummates a transaction that constitutes a Change in Control (as defined in the Favit-Van Pelt Employment Agreement), all of the unvested shares underlying Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's options will fully vest and become exercisable immediately prior to the effectiveness of such Change in Control. In the event of Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's death during the employment period or a termination due to disability, for cause by the Company or as a result of resignation without good reason (the date of such termination, the "**Termination Date**"), Dr. Favit-Van Pelt or her beneficiaries or legal representatives will be provided any annual base salary earned, but unpaid, for services rendered to the Company on or prior to the date on which the employment period ends and the following additional other benefits under the Favit-Van Pelt Employment Agreement (the "**Unconditional Entitlements**"):

- All benefits payable to Dr. Favit-Van Pelt under any employee benefit plans (including, without limitation any pension plans or 401(k) plans) of the Company or any of its affiliates applicable to Dr. Favit-Van Pelt at the time of her termination of employment and all amounts and benefits (other than the Conditional Benefits) which are vested or which Dr. Favit-Van Pelt is otherwise entitled to receive under the terms of any plan, policy, practice or program of, or any contract or agreement with, the Company, at or subsequent to the Termination Date without

[Table of Contents](#)

regard to the performance by Dr. Favit-Van Pelt of further services or the resolution of a contingency, will be paid or provided according to the terms of such plans, as determined on the basis of the actual date of termination of Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's employment with the Company;

- Any right which Dr. Favit-Van Pelt may have to claim a defense and/or indemnity for liabilities to or claims asserted by third parties in connection with Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's activities as an officer, director or employee of the Company shall be unaffected by Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's termination of employment and shall remain in effect;
- Dr. Favit-Van Pelt will be entitled to continuation of health care coverage as is required under, and in accordance with, applicable law or otherwise provided in accordance with the Company's policies;
- Dr. Favit-Van Pelt will be entitled to reimbursement, in accordance with the Company's policies regarding expense reimbursement for all business expenses incurred prior to the Termination Date; and
- Except to the extent additional rights are provided upon Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's qualifying to receive the Conditional Benefits (as defined in the Favit-Van Pelt Employment Agreement), Dr. Favit-Van Pelt's rights with respect to any stock option, restricted stock or other equity award granted by the Company will be governed by the terms and provisions of the applicable equity incentive plan, stock option award documents or grant agreement.

In the event of a resignation by Dr. Favit-Van Pelt for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate her employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company's election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the initial term or any renewal term (not within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control), Dr. Favit-Van Pelt will

receive the Unconditional Entitlements and, subject to her signing and delivering to the Company and not revoking a general release of claims in favor of the Company and certain related parties, the Company shall provide Dr. Favit-Van Pelt (i) a severance amount equal to the sum of her annual base salary as of the termination date and a pro-rated portion of her cash bonus for the year in which the termination occurs, (ii) Company-paid continued medical coverage for up to twelve months following such termination, and (iii) continued vesting of equity awards that would have vested if she had remained employed with the Company through the end of the then remaining portion of the Initial Term or the Renewal Term, as applicable (the “**Conditional Benefits**”). In the event of a resignation by Dr. Favit-Van Pelt for good reason, the exercise by the Company of its right to terminate her employment other than for cause, death or disability or the Company’s election not to extend the employment period upon expiration of the Initial Term or any Renewal Term, in each case, within twelve months following or three months prior to the effective date of a Change in Control, Dr. Favit-Van Pelt shall receive (i) the Unconditional Entitlements, (ii) 1.5 times the sum of her annual base salary and target cash bonus, (iii) accelerated vesting of all equity awards that were assumed, continued or substituted by the surviving or acquiring corporation in the Change in Control and remain subject to time-based vesting conditions, if any, and (iv) the Conditional Benefits except the severance amount. During employment and for the one year period after termination, Dr. Favit-Van Pelt is subject to non-solicitation and non-competition requirements.

#### **Equity Incentive Plans**

Certain of our named executive officers have outstanding awards under (i) 2018 Plan, (ii) the 2022 Plan and (iii) the Company’s 2021 Inducement Plan (the “**Inducement Plan**”, and together with the 2018 Plan and the 2022 Plan, the “**Plans**”).

Under the 2018 Plan and the 2022 Plan, the Compensation Committee may provide, in individual award agreements or in any other written agreement between a participant and the company that the award will be subject to additional acceleration of vesting and exercisability in the event of a termination of employment or change in control.

Under the Inducement Plan, an award may be subject to additional acceleration of vesting and exercisability upon or after a change in control as may be provided in the award agreement for such award or as may be provided in any other written agreement between the Company and the participant, but in the absence of such provision, no such acceleration will automatically occur.

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

#### **Outstanding Equity Awards at December 31, 2023**

The following tables set forth certain information about equity awards granted to our named executive officers that remain outstanding as of December 31, 2023.

#### **Option Awards**

Name	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Unexercisable	Option	
			Exercise Price	Expiration Date
Dane C. Andreeff	11	0 (1)	18,165.00	8/7/2027
	9	0 (2)	19,232.50	5/14/2028
	10	0 (3)	11,830.00	3/27/2029
	35	0 (4)	953.75	6/9/2030
	61	0 (5)	665.00	5/24/2031
	1,800	0 (6)	667.50	6/1/2031
	4,248	972 (7)	778.50	6/13/2031
	2,336	1,164 (9)	234.00	5/22/2032

	858	862 (10)	27.00	9/12/2032
Jeffrey S. Mathiesen	34,540	69,080 (14)	15.45	2/13/2033
	35	0 (4)	953.75	6/9/2030
	61	0 (5)	665.00	5/24/2031
	1,682	378 (7)	778.50	6/13/2031
	496	244 (11)	234.00	5/22/2032
	180	180 (10)	27.00	9/12/2032
	17,952	35,908 (14)	15.45	2/13/2033
Antonella Favit-Van Pelt	180	180 (8)	822.50	7/6/2031
	400	200 (12)	234.00	2/15/2032
	102	98 (13)	27.00	9/12/2032
	9,752	19,508 (14)	15.45	2/13/2033

- (1) This option was granted on August 8, 2017. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (2) This option was granted on May 15, 2018. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (3) This option was granted on March 28, 2019. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (4) These options were granted on June 10, 2020. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (5) These options were granted on May 25, 2021. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (6) This option was granted on June 2, 2021. All of the shares subject to the option have vested.
- (7) These options were granted on June 14, 2021. 25% of the shares were fully vested as of the grant date; 25% of the shares will vest based on a performance condition; of the remaining shares, 25% of such number remaining shall vest on the one year anniversary of the grant date, and the remainder shall vest in thirty-six successive equal monthly installments on the last day of each full month.
- (8) This option was granted on July 7, 2021. The shares vest in equal annual installments over 4 years from the date of grant.
- (9) This options was granted on May 23, 2022. 583 shares of this option vested on June 30, 2022 and the remainder shall vest in ten successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on September 30, 2022.
- (10) These options were granted on September 13, 2022 and shall vest in 12 successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on September 30, 2022.
- (11) This option was granted on May 23, 2022. 123 shares of this option vested on June 30, 2022 and the remainder shall vest in ten successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on September 30, 2022.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

- (12) This option was granted on February 16, 2022 and shall vest in 12 successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on March 31, 2022.
- (13) This option was granted on September 13, 2022 and shall vest in 12 successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on September 30, 2022.
- (14) This option was granted on February 14, 2023 and shall vest in 12 successive equal quarterly installments on the last day of each fiscal quarter beginning on March 31, 2023.

**Chief Executive Officer Pay Ratio**

As a "smaller reporting company", we are not required to provide information relating to the ratio of total compensation of our Chief Executive Officer to the median of the annual total compensation of all of our employees, as required by Item 11 the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010, which is hereby incorporated by reference part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act.

**Non-Employee Director Compensation**

The Company maintains a non-employee director compensation policy, effective as of April 1, 2021, pursuant to which all of our non-employee directors receive an annual cash retainer of \$35,000 for Board service except for the Chairman of the Board who receives an annual cash retainer of \$68,000. In addition, directors receive an additional cash retainer for serving as a committee chair or member as follows:

		Nominating and Corporate Governance		
		Audit Committee	Compensation Committee	Governance Committee
		\$ 16,000	\$ 10,000	\$ 7,500
Committee Chair		\$ 16,000	\$ 10,000	\$ 7,500
Committee Member (other than the Chair)		\$ 8,000	\$ 5,000	\$ 5,000

Further, each director receives an annual equity retainer with a target value of approximately \$50,000. The equity retainer is paid 70% in options to purchase shares of our Common Stock, which vest in increments of 1/12 per month and 30% in restricted stock units (RSUs), which vest in increments of 1/12 per month. We also reimburse non-employee directors for reasonable expenses incurred in connection with attending Board and committee meetings.

The following table shows certain information with respect to the ~~sections~~ compensation of all non-employee directors of the ~~2023 Proxy Statement under Company for the~~ captions "Executive Compensation" and "Information Regarding the Board" fiscal year ended December 31, 2023.

Name	Fees earned or paid in cash	Option Awards	Stock Awards	Total
	(\$)	(\$) <sup>(5)</sup>	(\$) <sup>(5)</sup>	(\$)
Paul Buckman <sup>(1)</sup>	61,000	29,911	12,964	103,875
Sherrie Perkins <sup>(2)</sup>	47,500	29,911	12,964	90,375
Edward M. Straw <sup>(3)</sup>	58,000	29,911	12,964	100,875
Blane Walter <sup>(4)</sup>	76,000	29,911	12,964	118,875

(1) Mr. Buckman held options to purchase a total of 6,180 shares of common stock and 557 unvested RSUs at December 31, 2023.

(2) Ms. Perkins held options to purchase a total of 6,190 shares of common stock and 557 unvested RSUs at December 31, 2023.

(3) Vice Admiral (Retired) Straw held options to purchase a total of 6,274 shares of common stock and 557 unvested RSUs at December 31, 2023.

(4) Mr. Walter held options to purchase a total of 6,273 shares of common stock and 557 unvested RSUs at December 31, 2023.

---

[Table of Directors and Corporate Governance– Non-Employee Director Compensation.](#) [Contents](#)

(5) The amounts reflect the full grant date fair value for awards granted during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2023. The grant date fair value was computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, Compensation-Stock Compensation. The assumptions we used in valuing options are described in Note 9 to our audited financial statements included in this Form 10-K.

**ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS**

The following table sets forth certain information ~~required~~ regarding the ownership of our Common Stock as of March 1, 2024 by: (i) each director; (ii) each of our named executive officers; (iii) all executive officers and directors of the Company as a group; and (iv) all those known by ~~Item 12 is hereby incorporated by reference~~ the Company to be beneficial owners of more than five percent of our Common Stock.

We have determined beneficial ownership in accordance with the rules of the SEC. These rules generally attribute beneficial ownership of securities to persons who possess sole or shared voting power or investment power with respect to those securities. In addition, these rules require that we include shares of Common Stock issuable pursuant to the ~~sections~~ vesting of warrants and the ~~2023 Proxy Statement under~~ exercise of stock options that are either immediately exercisable or exercisable within 60 days of March 1, 2024, and restricted stock units that vest within 60 days of March 1, 2024. These shares are deemed to be outstanding and beneficially owned by the ~~captions~~ "Security

Ownership person holding those warrants or options for the purpose of Certain Beneficial Owners computing the percentage ownership of that person, but they are not treated as outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of any other person. This table is based on information supplied by officers, directors and Management" principal stockholders and "Executive Compensation." Schedule 13D, Schedule 13G and Section 16 filings, if any, with the SEC. Unless otherwise indicated, the persons or entities identified in this table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares shown as beneficially owned by them, subject to applicable community property laws.

Except as otherwise noted below, the address for persons listed in the table is c/o Helius Medical Technologies, Inc., 642 Newtown Yardley Road, Suite 100, Newtown, Pennsylvania 18940. As of March 1, 2024, we had 887,295 shares of Common Stock outstanding.

Beneficial Owner	Beneficial Ownership <sup>(1)</sup>		
	Number of Shares		Percent of Class
	of Common Stock	Beneficially Owned	
Columbus Capital Management, LLC <sup>(2)</sup>		70,116	7.9 %
Hudson Bay Capital Management LP <sup>(3)</sup>		60,422	6.8 %
Antonella Favit-Van Pelt <sup>(4)</sup>		12,939	1.4
Sherrie Perkins <sup>(5)</sup>		7,991	*
Edward M. Straw <sup>(6)</sup>		8,075	*
Blane Walter <sup>(7)</sup>		8,166	*
Paul Buckman <sup>(8)</sup>		7,977	*
Jeffrey S. Mathiesen <sup>(9)</sup>		25,307	2.8 %
Dane C. Andreeff <sup>(10)</sup>		87,115	9.3 %
All current executive officers and directors as a group (7 persons) <sup>(11)</sup>		157,570	17.8 %

\* Less than one percent

(1) This table is based upon information supplied by officers, directors and principal stockholders. Unless otherwise indicated in the footnotes to this table and subject to community property laws where applicable, the Company believes that each of the stockholders named in this table has sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares indicated as beneficially owned. Applicable percentages are based on 887,295 shares of common stock outstanding on March 1, 2024.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

(2) Includes 50,000 shares of common stock, and 20,116 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants. Columbus Capital Management, LLC, which serves as the general partner and investment manager to each of Columbus Capital QP Partners, L.P., Columbus Capital Partners, L.P., and Columbus Capital Offshore QP Fund, LTD. (collectively "the Funds"), and Mr. Matthew D. Ockner, as Managing Member of Columbus Capital Management, LLC, with the power to exercise investment and voting discretion, may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of all shares of common stock held by the Funds. The business address of Matthew D. Ockner is 1 Embarcadero Center, Suite 1130, San Francisco, CA 94111. The percentage in this table reflects that the reporting persons may not exercise the warrants to the extent such exercise would cause the reporting persons to beneficially own a number of shares of common stock that would exceed 9.99% of our then outstanding common stock following such exercise.

(3) Includes 60,422 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants. Hudson Bay Capital Management LP ("Hudson Bay"), which serves as the investment manager to Hudson Master Fund Ltd. (the "Fund") with the power to exercise investment and voting discretion, may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of all shares of Common stock held by the Fund. The business address of Hudson Bay Capital Management LP is 28 Havemeyer Place, 2nd Floor, Greenwich, Connecticut 06830. The percentage in this table reflects that the reporting persons may not exercise the warrants to the extent such exercise would cause the reporting persons to beneficially own a number of shares of common stock that would exceed 9.99% of our then outstanding common stock following such exercise.

(4) Includes 12,939 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options.

(5) Includes 1,520 shares of common stock, 6,190 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, and 281 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of restricted stock units.

(6) Includes 1,520 shares of common stock, 6,274 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, and 281 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of restricted stock units.

(7) Includes 1,612 shares of Common Stock, 6,273 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, and 281 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of restricted stock units.

(8) Includes 1,516 shares of common stock, 6,180 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, and 281 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of restricted stock units.

(9) Includes 238 shares of common stock and 25,069 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options.

(10) Includes 16,511 shares of common stock and 246 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants held by Maple Leaf Partners, L.P., 3,402 shares of common stock and 67 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants held by Maple Leaf Partners I, L.P., 11,594 shares of common stock and 163 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants held by Maple Leaf Discovery I, L.P., 1,882 shares of common stock and 28 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants held by Maple Leaf Offshore, Ltd., 29 shares on common stock held directly by Mr. Andreeff and 53,193 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options held directly by Mr. Andreeff. Mr. Andreeff has sole voting and dispositive power over shares held by Maple Leaf Partners, L.P., Maple Leaf Partners I, L.P., Maple Leaf Discovery I, L.P. and Maple Leaf Offshore, Ltd.

(11) Includes 39,824 shares of common stock, 504 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of warrants, 116,118 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options, and 1,124 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of restricted stock units.

[Table of Contents](#)

**Securities Authorized for Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans**

The following table presents information as of December 31, 2023 with respect to compensation plans under which shares of the Company's Common Stock may be issued.

Plan Category	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))		
	Number of Securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights	Weighted-average price of outstanding options, warrants and rights	Number of securities reflected in column (a))
(a)	(b)	(c)	
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders(3)	2,760	\$ 189.75	9,240
Equity compensation plan approved by security holders	253,039	\$ 104.33	14,121
<b>Total</b>	<b>255,799</b>	<b>\$ 105.26</b>	<b>23,361</b>

(1) The number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under our 2022 Plan automatically increases on January 1st of each calendar year, starting on January 1, 2023 through January 1, 2028, to an amount equal to 20% of the total number of fully-diluted shares of our common stock as of December 31 of the preceding calendar year, or a lesser number of shares determined by our Board.

(2) Consists of 14,121 shares remaining available for issuance under the 2022 Plan, 0 shares remaining available for issuance under the 2018 Plan, and 9,240 shares remaining available for issuance under the 2021 Inducement Plan

(3) There are no other securities available for future issuance under Plans of the Company as of December 31, 2023.

[Table of Contents](#)

**ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE**

**The information required by Item 13 is hereby incorporated by reference to the sections of the 2023 Proxy Statement under the captions "Certain Relationships and Related Transactions"**

The following includes a summary of transactions since January 1, 2023 to which the Company has been a participant in which the amount involved exceeded or will exceed the lesser of \$120,000 or 1% of the average of the Company's total assets at year end for the last two completed fiscal years, and "Information Regarding in which any of our directors, executive officers or holders of more than five percent of our capital stock, or any members of their immediate family, had or will have a direct or indirect material interest. Other than described below, there have not been, nor are there currently any proposed, transactions or series of similar transactions to which we have been or will be a party other than compensation arrangements, which include equity and other compensation, termination, change in control and other arrangements, which are described under "Item 11 - Executive Compensation."

**Indemnification Agreements**

The Company provides indemnification for its directors and officers so that they will be free from undue concern about personal liability in connection with their service to the Board Company. Under the Company's Second Amended and Restated Bylaws, the Company is required to indemnify its directors and officers to the extent not prohibited under Delaware or other applicable law. The Company has also entered into indemnity agreements with its officers and directors. These agreements provide, among other things, that the Company will indemnify the officer or director, under the circumstances and to the extent provided for in the agreement, for expenses, damages, judgments, fines and settlements he or she may be required to pay in actions or proceedings which he or she is or may be made a party by reason of Directors his or her position as a director, officer or other agent of the Company, and Corporate Governance - Independence otherwise to the fullest extent permitted under applicable law and the Company's Second Amended and Restated Bylaws.

**Policies and Procedures for Transactions with Related Parties**

In January 2018, the Company adopted a written Related-Person Transactions Policy that sets forth the Company's policies and procedures regarding the identification, review, consideration and approval or ratification of "related-persons transactions." For purposes of the Company's policy only, a "related-person transaction" is a transaction, arrangement or relationship (or any series of similar transactions, arrangements or relationships) in which the Company and any "related person" are participants involving an amount that exceeds \$120,000. Transactions involving compensation for services provided to the Company as an employee, director, consultant or similar capacity by a related person are not covered by this policy. A related person is any executive officer, director, nominee to become director, or more than 5% stockholders of the Company, including any of their immediate family members, and any entity owned or controlled by such persons.

Under the policy, where a transaction has been identified as a related-person transaction, management must present information regarding the proposed related-person transaction to the Audit Committee (or, where Audit Committee approval would be inappropriate, to another independent body of the Board) for consideration and approval or ratification. The presentation must include a description of, among other things, the material facts, the interests, direct and indirect, of the related persons, the benefits to the Company of the transaction and whether any alternative transactions were available. To identify related-person transactions in advance, the Company relies on information supplied by its executive officers, directors and certain significant stockholders. In considering related-person transactions, the Audit Committee takes into account the relevant available facts and circumstances including, but not limited to (a) the risks, costs and benefits to the Company, (b) the impact on a director's independence in the event the related person is a director, immediate family member of a director or an entity with which a director is affiliated, (c) the terms of the transaction, (d) the availability of other sources for comparable services or products and (e) the terms available to or from, as the case may be, unrelated third parties or to or from employees generally. In the event a director has an interest in the proposed transaction, the director must recuse himself or herself from the deliberations and approval. The policy requires that, in determining whether to approve, ratify or reject a related-person transaction, the Audit Committee consider, in light of known circumstances, whether the transaction is in, or is not inconsistent with, the best interests of the Company and its stockholders, as the Audit Committee determines in the good faith exercise of its discretion.

The Audit Committee and/or the independent directors of the Board review such proposed business transactions to ensure that the Company's involvement in such transactions is on terms comparable to those that could be obtained in arm's length dealings with an unrelated third party and is in the best interests of Directors, the Company and its stockholders.

#### **Director Independence**

The Board reviews its composition annually, including the determination of the independence of our directors. Our Board consults with the Company's counsel to ensure that the Board's determinations are consistent with relevant securities and other laws and regulations regarding the definition of "independent" set forth in pertinent listing standards of Nasdaq, as in effect from time to time.

Consistent with these considerations, after review of all relevant identified transactions or relationships between each director, or any of his or her family members, and the Company, its senior management and its independent auditors, the Board has affirmatively determined that all of the Company's director nominees, other than Messrs. Andreeff and Mathiesen, are independent, as defined under the Nasdaq listing standards. In making those independence determinations, the Board took into account certain relationships and transactions that occurred in the ordinary course of business between the Company and entities with which some of its directors are or have been affiliated. The Board considered all relationships and transactions that occurred during any 12-month period within the last three fiscal years. The Board determined that the relationships would not interfere with their exercise of independent judgment in carrying out their responsibilities as directors.

#### **ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES**

The information required by Item 14 is hereby incorporated by reference. Audit Committee retained Baker Tilly US, LLP to audit the Company's consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022. The following table represents aggregate fees billed to the sections Company for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022 (amounts in thousands).

	Fiscal Year Ended		Fiscal Year Ended	
	December 31, 2023	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2023	December 31, 2022
Audit Fees <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 428	\$ 236		
Audit-Related Fees	—	—		
Tax Fees <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 42	\$ 41		
All Other Fees	—	—		
<b>Total Fees</b>	<b>\$ 470</b>	<b>\$ 274</b>		

[Table of Contents](#)

- (1) Audit fees included amounts billed for professional services rendered in connection with the audit of our consolidated financial statements and review of our interim consolidated financial statements included in quarterly reports and services that are normally provided by our principal accountant in connection with statutory and regulatory filings as well as professional services rendered in connection with the Company's public offerings, including reviewing registration statements and prospectuses and preparing comfort letters.
- (2) Tax fees included amounts billed for professional services for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning. These services included assistance regarding federal, state and tax compliance.

All fees described above were pre-approved by the [2023 Proxy Statement](#) under the caption "Proposal 2 - Ratification Audit Committee."

**Policy on Audit Committee Pre-Approval of Appointment Audit and Permissible Non-Audit Services of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm." Firm**

The Company's Audit Committee has adopted policies and procedures for the pre-approval of audit services and permitted non-audit and tax services rendered by our independent registered public accounting firm. The policy generally provides pre-approval of specified services in the defined categories of audit services, audit-related services and tax services up to specified amounts. Pre-approval may also be given as part of the Audit Committee's approval of the scope of the engagement of the independent auditor or on an individual, explicit, case-by-case basis before the independent auditor is engaged to provide each service. The Audit Committee must pre-approve all services provided by the independent registered public accounting firm.

The Audit Committee has determined that the rendering of services other than audit services by Baker Tilly US, LLP is compatible with maintaining the principal accountant's independence.

6385

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**PART IV**

**ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES**

The following documents are filed as part of this Form 10-K:

1. Financial Statements—See the Index to Consolidated Financial Statements on Page F-1.
2. Financial Statement Schedules—None. We have omitted financial statement schedules because they are not required or are not applicable, or the required information is shown in the consolidated financial statements or notes to the consolidated financial statements.
3. Exhibits.

Exhibit Number	Exhibit
3.1	<a href="#">Certificate of Conversion filed with the Delaware Secretary of State on July 18, 2018 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Form 10-Q filed August 9, 2018).</a>
3.2	<a href="#">Certificate of Incorporation, as corrected (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Form 8-K filed October 30, 2018).</a>

3.3	<a href="#">Certificate of Amendment to Certificate of Incorporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Form 8-K filed on December 31, 2020)</a>
3.4	<a href="#">Bylaws Certificate of Amendment to Certificate of Incorporation, as amended corrected (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Form 8-K filed on August 16, 2023)</a>
3.5	<a href="#">Second Amended and Restated Restated Bylaws (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.3 to the Form 10-Q 8-K filed August 9, 2018 March 15, 2024)</a>
4.1	<a href="#">Form of Warrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Form 8-K filed October 26, 2020)</a>
4.2	<a href="#">Form of Warrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Form S-1/A filed January 20, 2021)</a>
4.3	<a href="#">Warrant Agency Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the Form S-1/A filed January 20, 2021)</a>
4.4	<a href="#">Description of Registrant's Securities (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.7 to the Form 10-K filed March 14, 2021)</a>
4.5	<a href="#">Warrant Agency Agreement dated as of February 1, 2021 by and between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and American Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the Form 8-K filed February 1, 2021)</a>
4.6	<a href="#">Form of Warrant to purchase shares of common stock (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Form 8-K filed August 9, 2022)</a>
4.7	<a href="#">Warrant Agency Agreement dated as of August 9, 2022 by and between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and American Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the Form 8-K filed August 9, 2022)</a>
10.1	<a href="#">License Agreement between Advanced NeuroRehabilitation, LLC and Yuri Danilov, Mitchell Tyler, Kurt Kaczmarek and John Klus, dated June 29, 2011 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 to the Amendment to Form S-1 filed with the SEC on September 23, 2014)</a>
10.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Patent Sub-License Agreement between Advanced NeuroRehabilitation, LLC and Helius Medical, Inc. having an effective date of January 22, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form S-1 filed with the SEC on July 14, 2014)</a>
10.3	<a href="#">Second Amended and Restated Patent Sub-License Agreement between Advanced NeuroRehabilitation, LLC and Helius Medical, Inc. dated June 6, 2014, but having an effective date of January 22, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7 to the Form S-1 filed with the SEC on July 14, 2014)</a>
10.4	<a href="#">Design and Manufacturing Consultant Agreement between Helius Medical, Inc and Clinvue, LLC, dated January 30, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Form S-1 filed with the SEC on July 14, 2014)</a>
10.5	<a href="#">Commercial Development-to-Supply Program between Helius Medical, Inc and Ximedica, dated October 25, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to the Form S-1 filed with the SEC on July 14, 2014)</a>

6486

---

[Table of Contents](#)

Exhibit Number	Exhibit
10.5	<a href="#">Commercial Development-to-Supply Program between Helius Medical, Inc and Ximedica, dated October 25, 2013 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to the Form S-1 filed with the SEC on July 14, 2014)</a>
10.6‡	<a href="#">Asset Purchase Agreement between the Company and A&amp;B (HK) Company Limited, dated as of October 9, 2015 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to the Form 8-K filed with the SEC on October 16, 2015)</a>
10.6.1	<a href="#">Amendment to Asset Purchase Agreement between the Company and A&amp;B (HK) Company Limited, dated as of October 30, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed with the SEC on November 2, 2017)</a>
10.6.2	<a href="#">Supplemental Agreement to Asset Purchase Agreement dated October 9, 2015, between Helius Medical, Inc. and A&amp;B (HK) Company Limited, dated as of August 15, 2018 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.27 to the Form 10-K filed March 14, 2019)</a>
10.7†	<a href="#">Amended and Restated June 2014 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.3 to the Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on November 9, 2017)</a>
10.7.1†	<a href="#">2014 Stock Incentive Plan Form of Option Grant Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.23.1 to the Transition Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on April 3, 2017)</a>

10.8†	<a href="#">2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.25 to the Transition Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on April 3, 2017)</a>
10.8.1†	<a href="#">Amendment Number 1 to the 2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.25.1 to the Transition Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on April 3, 2017)</a>
10.8.2†	<a href="#">Amendment Number 2 to the 2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.7 to the Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed with the SEC on May 18, 2017)</a>
10.8.3†	<a href="#">2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of U.S. Option Grant Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.8 to the Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed with the SEC on May 18, 2017)</a>
10.8.4†	<a href="#">2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Canada Option Grant Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.9 to the Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed with the SEC on May 18, 2017)</a>
10.9†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan, as amended (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Form 10-Q filed November 8, 2018)</a>
10.9.1†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Option Grant Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Form 10-Q filed November 8, 2018)</a>
10.9.2†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Restricted Stock Unit Grant Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to the Form 10-Q filed November 8, 2018)</a>
10.9.3†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Option Grant Agreement – 2020 Retention Grant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on October 7, 2020)</a>
10.9.4†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Stock Grant Notice and Award Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on April 7, 2021)</a>
10.9.5†	<a href="#">Amendment to the Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on May 27, 2021)</a>
10.9.6†	<a href="#">2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan Form of Option Grant Agreement – Initial Grants to Dane C. Andreeff and Jeffrey S. Mathiesen (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Form 8-K filed on June 15, 2021)</a>
10.10†	<a href="#">Form of Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.24 to the Form 10-K filed March 10, 2021)</a>
10.11	<a href="#">Non-employee Director Compensation Policy (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7 to the Form 10-Q filed on May 17, 2021)</a>
10.12†	<a href="#">Employment Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Dane C. Andreeff, dated June 14, 2021 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on June 15, 2021)</a>
10.13†	<a href="#">Employment Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, dated June 14, 2021 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Form 8-K filed on June 15, 2021)</a>
10.14†	<a href="#">Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2021 Inducement Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.6 to the Form S-8 filed July 7, 2021)</a>
10.14.1†	<a href="#">Form of Stock Option Grant Notice, Option Agreement and Notice of Exercise under the Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2021 Inducement Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.5 to the Form S-8 filed July 7, 2021)</a>
10.15	<a href="#">Purchase Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC dated September 1, 2021 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on September 2, 2021)</a>

6587

---

[Table of Contents](#)

Exhibit Number	Exhibit
10.15	<a href="#">Purchase Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC dated September 1, 2021 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on September 2, 2021)</a>
10.16†	<a href="#">Employment Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Antonella Favit-Van Pelt, dated July 7, 2021 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.31 to the Form S-1 filed on September 3, 2021)</a>

10.17†	<a href="#">Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2022 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on February 18, 2022)</a>
10.17.1†	<a href="#">Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2022 Equity Incentive Plan Form of Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Form 8-K filed on February 18, 2022)</a>
<b>16.1</b> 10.17.2†	<a href="#">Letter from BDO USA, LLP Sales Agreement between Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and Roth Capital Partners, LLC, dated June 23, 2023 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit <b>16.1</b> 1 to the Form 8-K filed on September 30, 2022 June 23, 2023)</a>
21.1*	<a href="#">Subsidiaries of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.</a>
23.1*	<a href="#">Consent of Baker Tilly US, LLP</a>
<b>23.2*</b>	<a href="#">Consent of BDO USA, LLP</a>
31.1*	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes – Oxley Act of 2002</a>
31.2*	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes – Oxley Act of 2002</a>
32.1*	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes – Oxley Act of 2002</a>
<b>97.1*</b>	<a href="#">Clawback Policy</a>
101.INS*	Inline XBRL Instance Document
101.SCH*	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document
101.CAL*	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document
101.LAB*	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document
101.PRE*	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document
101.DEF*	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document
104*	Cover Page Interactive Data File (formatted as Inline XBRL and contained in Exhibit 101)

\* Filed herewith.

† Indicates a management contract or compensatory plan.

‡ Confidential information has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been granted with respect to this omitted information.

#### ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY

None

66 88

[Table of Contents](#)

#### INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

<a href="#">REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM (BAKER TILLY US, LLP; MINNEAPOLIS, MN; PCAOB ID #23)</a>	F-1
<a href="#">REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM (BDO USA, LLP; PHILADELPHIA, PA; PCAOB ID #243)</a>	F-3
<a href="#">CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS</a>	F-4 F-3
<a href="#">CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS</a>	F-5 F-4
<a href="#">CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</a>	F-6 F-5
<a href="#">CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS</a>	F-7 F-6
<a href="#">NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</a>	F-8 F-7

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the ~~stockholders~~ shareholders and the board of directors of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.:

### Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheet of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. (the "Company") as of ~~December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022~~, the related consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the ~~year~~ years ended ~~December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022~~, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of ~~December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022~~, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the ~~year~~ years ended ~~December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022~~, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

### Going Concern Uncertainty

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 of the consolidated financial statements, the Company has recurring losses from operations, an accumulated deficit, expects to incur losses for the foreseeable future and requires additional working capital. These are the reasons that raise substantial doubt about their ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note 1. The consolidated financial statements do not contain any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

### Basis for Opinion

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB") and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audit we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audit included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audit also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

### Critical Audit Matter

~~The critical~~ Critical audit matter communicated below is a matter~~s~~ arising from the current period audit of the financial statements that ~~was~~ were communicated or required to be communicated to the audit committee and that: (1) relate to accounts or disclosures that are material to the financial statements and (2) involved our especially challenging, subjective, or complex judgments. The communication

of critical audit matters does not alter in any way our opinion on the financial statements, taken as a whole, and we are not, by communicating the critical audit matter below, providing separate opinions on the critical audit matter or on the accounts or disclosures to which it relates.

[Table of Contents](#)

**Critical Audit Matter Description**

**Valuation of warrants**

As described in Note 8 to the **consolidated** financial statements, the Company completed an equity offering during the **prior** year which included the issuance of warrants. Management evaluated the classification of the warrants as either equity or liability presentation by reviewing the terms and conditions of the issued warrants and applying the applicable accounting guidance, including **Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 480, Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity** and **ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging**. Management concluded the warrants met the criteria for the classification as liabilities. Given the liability treatment, the Company is required to determine the fair value of the warrants at each reporting period.

Due to the complexity in the accounting guidance, the need for management judgment in applying the accounting guidance, and the fact that a slight change in terms can result in significant changes in both the initial accounting and subsequent accounting for the warrants, we identified the evaluation of the classification of the warrants issued during the year as a critical audit matter.

In addition, due to the complexities in determining the fair value, including use of complex valuation techniques and management judgment and estimation in determining assumptions and inputs into the valuation model, we identified the evaluation of the classification valuation of the warrants issued during the year as a critical audit matter.

**How We Addressed the Matter in Our Audit**

The primary procedures we performed to address this critical audit matter included:

- We obtained the Company's accounting analysis for the equity offering during the year. We compared the terms described in the Company's analysis to the terms of the respective agreements to determine the completeness and accuracy of the analysis performed.
  - With the assistance of a firm personnel having expertise in valuation specialist, evaluated the accounting for complex equity instruments, we performed a detailed examination methodology(ies) and key assumptions used by management to assess the Company's fair value of the warrant agreement for liability, including assessing the equity offering, with a primary focus on reasonableness of the key terms and conditions and applying source information underlying the Indexation Guidance. The warrants failed the Indexation Guidance given the impact of potential future changes to pricing/conversion rates unrelated to future equity issuances. We agreed with the conclusion to classify the warrants as a liability, valuation assumptions.
  - With Performing an independent calculation to test the assistance reasonableness of firm personnel having expertise in the valuation fair value of derivative instruments, we reviewed the Company's valuation, including determining the impact of key provisions from the warrant agreement and tying out inputs into the valuation model. We performed an independent analysis validating the Company's calculation, liability.

/s/ Baker Tilly US, LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2022.

Minneapolis, Minnesota

March 9, 2023 28, 2024

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

Board of Directors and Stockholders

Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.

Newtown, Pennsylvania

**Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheet of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. (the "Company") as of December 31, 2021, the related consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at December 31, 2021, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

**Going Concern Uncertainty**

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has incurred substantial net losses since its inception, has an accumulated deficit of \$137.0 million as of December 31, 2021 and the Company expects to incur further net losses in the development of its business. These conditions raise substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans concerning these matters are also described in Note 1. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

**Basis for Opinion**

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's consolidated financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB") and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audit we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audit included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audit also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ BDO USA, LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor from 2017 to 2022.

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

March 14, 2022

[Table of Contents](#)

**Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.**

**Consolidated Balance Sheets**

(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	2023	2022	2023	2022
<b>ASSETS</b>				
<b>Current assets</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 14,549	\$ 11,005	\$ 5,182	\$ 14,549
Accounts receivable, net	71	66	117	71
Other receivables	272	185	520	272
Inventory, net	589	476	457	589
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	1,216	862	1,162	1,216
Total current assets	16,697	12,594	7,438	16,697
Property and equipment, net	347	409	178	347
Goodwill	—	763	—	—
Intangible assets, net	140	333	24	140
Operating lease right-of-use asset, net	103	3	52	103
Total assets	\$ 17,287	\$ 14,102	\$ 7,692	\$ 17,287
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>				
<b>Current liabilities</b>				
Accounts payable	\$ 627	\$ 1,069	\$ 531	\$ 627
Accrued and other current liabilities	1,280	1,433	1,260	1,280
Operating lease liabilities	54	3	—	—
Deferred revenue	27	148	—	—
Current portion of operating lease liabilities			45	54
Current portion of deferred revenue			43	27
Total current liabilities	1,988	2,653	1,879	1,988
Operating lease liabilities	56	—	—	—
Deferred revenue	175	193	—	—
Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion			12	56
Deferred revenue, net of current portion			128	175
Derivative liability	6,917	—	3,323	6,917
Total liabilities	9,136	2,846	5,342	9,136
Commitments and contingencies (Note 13)				
Commitments and contingencies				
<b>Stockholders' equity</b>				
Preferred stock, \$0.001 par value; 10,000,000 shares authorized; no shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021	—	—	—	—
Class A common stock, \$0.001 par value; 150,000,000 shares authorized; 28,207,330 and 3,780,674 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021, respectively	28	4	—	—
Class A common stock, \$0.001 par value; 150,000,000 shares authorized; 714,590 and 564,094 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022, respectively			1	1
Additional paid-in capital	159,618	149,412	162,979	159,645
Accumulated deficit	(151,107)	(137,035)	(159,957)	(151,107)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(388)	(1,125)	(673)	(388)
Total stockholders' equity	8,151	11,256	2,350	8,151

Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	\$ 17,287	\$ 14,102	\$ 7,692	\$ 17,287
--	-----------	-----------	----------	-----------

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

F-4 F-3

[Table of Contents](#)

**Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.**

**Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss**

(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Years Ended December 31,			
	Years Ended December 31,			
	2022	2021	2023	2022
<b>Revenue</b>				
Product sales, net	\$ 778	\$ 493	\$ 605	\$ 778
Other revenue	9	29	39	9
Total revenue	787	522	644	787
Cost of revenue	463	298	583	463
Gross profit	324	224	61	324
<b>Operating expenses</b>				
Selling, general and administrative expenses	10,640	12,176	9,271	10,640
Research and development expenses	4,262	5,990	2,942	4,262
Amortization expense	181	200	117	181
Goodwill impairment	757	—	—	757
Goodwill and fixed asset impairment			159	757
Total operating expenses	15,840	18,366	12,489	15,840
Loss from operations	(15,516)	(18,142)	(12,428)	(15,516)
<b>Nonoperating income (expense)</b>				
Interest expense, net	(834)	—	—	—
Interest income (expense), net			257	(834)
Change in fair value of derivative liability	3,027	—	2,966	3,027
Foreign exchange (loss) gain	(756)	10	—	—
Other income, net	7	—	—	7
Foreign exchange gain (loss)			275	(756)
Other income (expense), net			80	7
Nonoperating income (expense), net	1,444	10	3,578	1,444
Loss before provision for income taxes	(14,072)	(18,132)	(8,850)	(14,072)
Provision for income taxes	—	—	—	—
Net loss	(14,072)	(18,132)	(8,850)	(14,072)
<b>Other comprehensive income (loss)</b>				
Foreign currency translation adjustments	737	(26)	(285)	737
Comprehensive loss	\$ (13,335)	\$ (18,158)	\$ (9,135)	\$ (13,335)
<b>Loss per share</b>				
Basic	\$ (1.04)	\$ (7.38)	\$ (14.56)	\$ (52.13)
Diluted	\$ (1.04)	\$ (7.38)	\$ (14.56)	\$ (52.13)

Weighted average number of common shares outstanding							
Basic				13,497,159	2,456,782	607,890	269,929
Diluted				13,497,159	2,456,782	607,890	269,929

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

F-5 F-4

[Table of Contents](#)

**Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.**

**Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity**

(in thousands, except share amounts)

	Accumulated						Accumulated					
	Additional			Other			Additional			Other		
	Class A Common Stock	Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Comprehensive Loss	Total	Class A Common Stock	Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Comprehensive Loss	Total		
	Shares	Amount	Capital	Deficit	Loss		Shares	Amount	Capital	Deficit	Loss	Total
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2020</b>	1,484,362	\$ 1	\$123,872	\$(118,903)	\$ (1,099)	\$ 3,871						
<b>Balance as of January 1, 2022</b>							75,570	\$ —	\$149,416	\$(137,035)	\$ (1,125)	\$ 11
Common stock issued under equity line of credit	40,000	—	577	—	—	577	7,827	—	644	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock in public offering	2,129,967	3	19,477	—	—	19,480	480,000	1	8,055	—	—	8
Issuance of warrants in public offering	—	—	2,638	—	—	2,638						
Share issuance costs	31,958	—	(2,744)	—	—	(2,744)	—	—	(758)	—	—	0
Exercise of warrants	81,895	—	1,318	—	—	1,318						
Exercise of stock options	214	—	2	—	—	2						
Settlement of restricted stock units	5,012	—	—	—	—	—	364	—	—	—	—	—
Common stock issued for services	1,929	—	20	—	—	20	173	—	34	—	—	—

Stock-based compensation	5,337	—	4,252	—	—	4,252	160	—	2,254	—	—	2
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—	—	(26)	(26)	—	—	—	—	—	
Other comprehensive gain	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	737	
Net loss	—	—	—	(18,132)	—	(18,132)	—	—	—	(14,072)	—	(14,
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2021</b>	<b>3,780,674</b>	<b>\$ 4</b>	<b>\$149,412</b>	<b>\$ (137,035)</b>	<b>\$ (1,125)</b>	<b>\$ 11,256</b>						
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2022</b>							<b>564,094</b>	<b>\$ 1</b>	<b>\$159,645</b>	<b>\$ (151,107)</b>	<b>\$ (388)</b>	<b>\$ 8</b>

	Accumulated						Additional				Accumulated			
	Class A Common Stock		Additional		Other		Class A Common Stock		Additional					
	Shares	Amount	Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Comprehensive Loss	Total	Shares	Amount	Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit				
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2021</b>	<b>3,780,674</b>	<b>\$ 4</b>	<b>\$149,412</b>	<b>\$ (137,035)</b>	<b>\$ (1,125)</b>	<b>\$ 11,256</b>								
Common stock issued under equity line of credit	391,363	—	644	—	—	644								
<b>Balance as of January 1, 2023</b>							<b>564,094</b>	<b>\$ 1</b>	<b>\$159,645</b>	<b>\$ (151,107)</b>	<b>\$ (8,850)</b>			
Issuance of common stock in public offering	24,000,000	24	8,032	—	—	8,056	53,010	—	500	—	—			
Share issuance costs	—	—	(758)	—	—	(758)	—	—	(65)	—	—			
Exercise of warrants							92,910	—	1,270	—	—			
Settlement of restricted stock units	18,491	—	—	—	—	—	4,576	—	—	—	—			
Common stock issued for services	8,791	—	34	—	—	34								
Stock-based compensation	8,011	—	2,254	—	—	2,254	—	—	1,629	—	—			
Other comprehensive income	—	—	—	—	737	737								
Other comprehensive loss							—	—	—	—	—			
Net loss	—	—	—	(14,072)	—	(14,072)	—	—	—	—	(8,850)			
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2022</b>	<b>28,207,330</b>	<b>\$ 28</b>	<b>\$159,618</b>	<b>\$ (151,107)</b>	<b>\$ (388)</b>	<b>\$ 8,151</b>								
<b>Balance as of December 31, 2023</b>							<b>714,590</b>	<b>\$ 1</b>	<b>\$162,979</b>	<b>\$ (159,957)</b>	<b>\$ (8,850)</b>			

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

F-6 F-5

[Table of Contents](#)

Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.

**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**

(in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	2023	2022	2023	2022
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>				
Net loss	\$ (14,072)	\$ (18,132)	\$ (8,850)	\$ (14,072)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:				
Change in fair value of derivative liability	(3,027)	—	(2,966)	(3,027)
Stock-based compensation expense	2,254	4,252	1,629	2,254
Common stock issued for services	34	20	—	34
Foreign exchange loss (gain)	746	(25)		
Foreign exchange (gain) loss			(286)	746
Depreciation expense	74	112	45	74
Amortization expense	181	200	117	181
Goodwill impairment	757	—		
Provision (reversal) for doubtful accounts	—	(22)		
Goodwill and fixed asset impairment			159	757
Provision for (reversal of) inventory reserve	(2)	—	(5)	(2)
Non-cash operating lease expense	51	62	52	51
Loss from disposal of property and equipment	—	18		
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:				
Accounts receivable	(9)	30	(44)	(9)
Other receivables	(94)	(29)	(247)	(94)
Inventory, net	(111)	(87)		
Inventory			137	(111)
Prepaid expense and other current assets	(354)	(127)	54	(354)
Operating lease liability	(44)	(63)		
Operating lease liabilities			(53)	(44)
Accounts payable	(418)	369	(103)	(418)
Accrued and other current liabilities	(152)	194	(20)	(152)
Deferred revenue	(124)	(160)	(35)	(124)
Net cash used in operating activities	(14,310)	(13,388)	(10,416)	(14,310)
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>				
Purchase of property and equipment	(17)	(54)	(29)	(17)
Proceeds from sale of property and equipment	6	—	—	6
Internally developed software	—	(2)		
Net cash used in investing activities	(11)	(56)	(29)	(11)
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>				
Proceeds from issuances of common stock and warrants	18,644	22,695		
Proceeds from issuance of common stock			500	18,644
Proceeds from exercise of warrants			642	—
Share issuance costs	(775)	(2,889)	(65)	(775)
Proceeds from exercise of warrants and stock options	—	1,320		
Net cash provided by financing activities	17,869	21,126	1,077	17,869
Effect of currency exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	(4)	(8)	1	(4)
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	3,544	7,674		
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents			(9,367)	3,544
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	11,005	3,331	14,549	11,005
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 14,549	\$ 11,005	\$ 5,182	\$ 14,549
<b>Supplemental cash flow information</b>				
Cash paid for interest (share issuance costs allocated to derivative liability)	\$ 927	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 927
Non-cash investing and financing transactions:				

Right-of-use assets obtained in exchange for new lease liabilities	\$ 151	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 151
Non-cash share issuance costs	—	476		
Share issuance costs included in accounts payable	—	17		
Derivative warrant liability reclassified to equity on exercise of warrants	\$ 628	\$ —		

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

F-7 F-6

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.**

#### **Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements**

##### **1. DESCRIPTION OF BUSINESS**

Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. (together with its wholly owned subsidiaries the "Company") conducts operations in the United States and Canada. The Company's product, known as the Portable Neuromodulation Stimulator ("PoNS®") has been commercially available in Canada since March 2019. The Company began accepting prescriptions for its PoNS product in the United States in the first quarter of 2022, and the first commercial sales began in April 2022. PoNS is authorized for sale as a Class IIa medical device in Australia. The Company is working to establish a distribution partner for Australia but has not yet had any commercial sales of PoNS in Australia.

##### **Going Concern Uncertainty**

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Company had cash and cash equivalents of \$14.5 million \$5.2 million. For the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Company had an operating loss of \$15.5 million \$12.4 million, and as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, its accumulated deficit was \$151.1 million \$160.0 million. For the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Company had \$0.8 million \$0.6 million of net revenue from the commercial sale of products. The Company expects to continue to incur operating losses and net cash outflows until such time as it generates a level of revenue to support its cost structure. There is no assurance that the Company will achieve profitable operations, and, if achieved, whether it will be sustained on a continued basis. These factors indicate substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the date the consolidated financial statements are filed. The Company's consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the basis of continuity of operations, realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the ordinary course of business; no adjustments have been made relating to the recoverability and classification of recorded asset amounts and classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Company not continue as a going concern.

The Company intends to fund ongoing activities by utilizing its current cash and cash equivalents on hand, cash received from the sale of its PoNS device in the U.S. and Canada and by raising additional capital through equity or debt financings. There can be no assurance that the Company will be successful in raising additional capital or that such capital, if available, will be on terms that are acceptable to the Company. If the Company is unable to raise sufficient additional capital, the Company may be compelled to reduce the scope of its operations.

##### **2. SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

###### **Principles of Consolidation**

The accompanying consolidated financial statements reflect the operations of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

###### **Reclassifications**

Certain prior period amounts have been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation.

## Use of Estimates

The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the consolidated financial statements and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. Significant estimates include the assumptions used in the valuation of the fair value-pricing model for stock-based compensation, liability classified warrants and deferred income tax asset valuation allowance. Financial statements include estimates, which, by their nature, are uncertain. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

F-8 F-7

---

## Table of Contents

### Global Economic Conditions

Generally, worldwide economic conditions remain uncertain, particularly due to the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic and increased inflation. The general economic and capital market conditions both in the United States and worldwide, have been volatile in the past and at times have adversely affected the Company's access to capital and increased the cost of capital. The capital and credit markets may not be available to support future capital raising activity on favorable terms. If economic conditions decline, the Company's future cost of equity or debt capital and access to the capital markets could be adversely affected.

The COVID-19 pandemic that began in late 2019 introduced significant volatility to the global economy, disrupted supply chains and had a widespread adverse effect on the financial markets. Additionally, the Company's operating results could be materially impacted by changes in the overall macroeconomic environment and other economic factors. Changes in economic conditions, supply chain constraints, logistics challenges, labor shortages, the conflict in Ukraine, and steps taken by governments and central banks, particularly in response to the COVID-19 pandemic as well as other stimulus and spending programs, have led to higher inflation, which has led to an increase in costs and has caused changes in fiscal and monetary policy, including increased interest rates. Although the Company may take measures to mitigate these impacts, if these measures are not effective, the Company's business, financial condition, results of operations, and liquidity could be materially adversely affected.

### Foreign Currency Translation

The local currency, or CAD\$, is the functional currency of the Company's foreign operating subsidiary, Helius Medical Technologies (Canada), Inc. All assets and liabilities are translated into United States dollars at the rate of exchange in effect at the balance sheet date. Income and expense items are translated at the weighted-average exchange rate prevailing during the period. The effects of foreign currency translation adjustments are deferred and reported in stockholders' equity as a component of "Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss." The effects of foreign currency transactions denominated in a currency other than an entity's functional currency are included in "Foreign Exchange (Loss) Gain" in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

### Revenue Recognition

Revenue is recognized when control of the promised goods is transferred to the customer in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the Company expects to be entitled in exchange for those products.

The Company generates nearly all of its revenue from product sales directly to patients, its e-commerce partner in the United States and to clinics in Canada. Revenue from product sales is recognized at a point in time when as the performance obligation is satisfied upon delivery and when the customer obtains control of the product. product at the established transaction price. Taxes that the Company collects concurrent with revenue-producing activities are excluded from revenue.

The Company requires some customers in the United States to prepay the full product selling price, net of cash discount, prior to shipment. The Company records a contract liability for any customer prepayment received for which delivery had not yet occurred as of the end of the period.

### Concentration of Credit Risk

The Company deposits its cash and cash equivalents in demand commercial checking, and unrestricted money market savings account, money market mutual funds, treasury bills or certificates of deposit at high-quality credit institutions. At times, such deposits may be in excess of federally insured limits. The Company has not experienced any losses.

#### **Cash Equivalents**

The Company considers highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less to be cash equivalents. Cash equivalents are valued at cost, which approximates fair value.

F-9

---

[Table of Contents](#)

#### **Accounts Receivable**

Accounts receivable arise primarily from product sales in Canada and generally require payment within 30 days. The Company provides reserves against accounts receivable for estimated credit losses that may result from a customer's inability to pay based on a combination of factors, such as the aging of accounts receivable, the customer's financial strength and payment history. Amounts determined to be uncollectible are charged or written off against the reserve.

#### **Employee Retention Credit**

The employee retention credit ("ERC"), as originally enacted through the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security Act, is a refundable credit against certain employment taxes equal to 50% of the qualified wages an eligible employer pays to employees from March 17, 2020 to December 31, 2020. The Disaster Tax Relief Act extended the ERC for qualified wages paid from January 1, 2021 to June 30, 2021 and the credit was increased to 70% of qualified wages an eligible employer pays to employees during the extended period. The American Rescue Plan Act of 2021, enacted on March 11, 2021, further extended the ERC through December 31, 2021.

The Company qualified for the employee retention credit for the period from March 17, 2020 to September 30, 2021. The Company recognizes government credits for which there is a reasonable assurance of compliance with credit conditions and receipt of credits. The Company recorded a credit of \$0.5 million against operating expenses on the Consolidated Statement of Operations and Comprehensive Loss and as a current asset on the consolidated balance sheets during the year ended December 31, 2023. The Company expects to receive the credit in the next twelve months.

F-8

---

[Table of Contents](#)

#### **Inventory**

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost (average cost method) or net realizable value. The Company establishes inventory reserves for obsolescence based upon specific identification of expired or unusable units with a corresponding provision included in cost of revenue. The Company calculates provisions for excess inventory based on inventory on hand compared to anticipated sales or usage. Management uses its judgment to forecast sales or usage and to determine what constitutes a reasonable period. There can be no assurance that the amount ultimately realized for inventories will not be materially different than that assumed in the calculation of the reserves.

## **Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment are recorded at cost. Depreciation is calculated for financial reporting purposes on the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the related assets, which are seven years for furniture and fixtures, **15** years for equipment and three to five years for computer software and hardware. Depreciation expense is recorded in selling, general and administrative expenses. Expenditures for repairs and maintenance, which do not improve or extend the expected useful life of the assets, are expensed as incurred.

## **Long-Lived Assets**

Management reviews the carrying amounts of definite-lived intangible assets and long-lived **tangible** assets, **including right-of-use ("ROU") assets, property and equipment** whenever events or circumstances indicate that the carrying amounts of an asset may not be recoverable. For purposes of assessing recoverability, definite-lived intangible assets and long-lived tangible assets are each deemed to be one asset group. The carrying amount of the asset group is compared to the estimated undiscounted future cash flows associated with it. If the sum of the expected future net cash flows is less than the carrying value of the asset group being evaluated, an impairment loss is calculated as the amount by which the carrying value of the asset group exceeds its estimated fair value.

## **Leases**

The Company has **an** operating **leases** **lease** for its corporate **offices**, **office**. The Company determines whether a contract is, or contains, a lease at inception. **Right-of-use ROU** assets represent the Company's right to use an underlying asset during the lease term, and lease liabilities represent the Company's obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease. **Right-of-use ROU** assets and lease liabilities are recognized at lease commencement based upon the estimated present value of unpaid lease payments over the lease term. The Company uses its incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at lease commencement in determining the present value of unpaid lease payments. The Company's incremental borrowing rate is determined based on the estimated rate of interest for collateralized borrowing over a similar term as the associated lease. The Company's lease **arrangements do arrangement does** not have any lease and non-lease components.

## **Stock-Based Compensation**

The Company measures and recognizes compensation expense for all stock-based awards based on estimated fair values. Stock-based awards consist of stock options and restricted stock units. Stock-based compensation expense is measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and is recognized as expense over the requisite service period (vesting period) on a straight-line basis. Forfeitures are not estimated, but instead stock-based compensation expense is adjusted upon an actual forfeiture of a stock option. Upon exercise of stock options or vesting of restricted stock units, the Company issues common stock.

F-10

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

## **Income Taxes**

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases and operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to

F-9

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that includes the enactment date. A valuation allowance for deferred income tax assets is recorded when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred income tax assets will not be realized.

#### **Research and Development Expenses**

Research and development costs are charged to expense when incurred.

#### **Segment Information**

Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise for which discrete financial information is available that is evaluated regularly by the chief operating decision maker ("CODM") in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. Our CODM is the Chief Executive Officer. The Company operates and manages its business within one operating and reportable segment related to the sale of PONS Devices devices in the United States and Canada.

#### **Derivatives**

The Company does not engage in hedging activities. The Company evaluates its financial instruments and other contracts to determine if those contracts or embedded components of those contracts qualify as derivatives to be separately accounted for. The result of this accounting treatment is that the fair value of the derivative is re-measured at each balance sheet date and recorded as a liability or asset and the change in fair value is recorded in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss. Refer to Note 8 for details additional information about the derivative liability recorded during the year ended December 31, 2022. liability.

#### **Basic and Diluted Loss per Share**

Basic loss per share is computed by dividing net loss by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period. Diluted loss per share is based on the weighted-average common shares outstanding during the period plus dilutive potential common shares calculated using the treasury stock method. Such potentially dilutive shares are excluded when the effect would be to reduce a net loss per share.

#### **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In June 2016, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued ASU Accounting Standards Update 2016-13, *Financial Instruments – Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments*, which amended requires measurement and recognition of expected credit losses for financial assets held and requires enhanced disclosures regarding significant estimates and judgments used in estimating credit losses. As the Company meets the SEC definition of a Smaller Reporting Company filer, the guidance on the measurement of credit losses on financial instruments. The guidance was effective for Smaller Reporting Companies for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2022, including interim periods within those fiscal years. The adoption of this guidance on January 1, 2023 did not have a material impact on the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements.

### **3. GOODWILL AND FIXED ASSETS IMPAIRMENT**

#### **Fixed Asset Impairment**

The Company identified an impairment indicator associated with its property and equipment and performed interim impairment tests on the long-lived tangible assets as a result of a planned change of the Company's contract manufacturing partner to be completed in less than one year from September 30, 2023. The interim impairment tests were performed using estimated market prices. The Company has determined that the fair value of certain long-lived tangible assets is lower than the related book values. Additionally, for certain long-lived tangible assets, it is more likely than not that those long-lived assets will be disposed significantly before the end of their previously estimated useful lives. As a result, impairment charges of \$159 thousand were recorded in the third quarter of 2023 on its long-lived tangible assets.

### Goodwill Impairment

In September 2022, the Company recorded an impairment charge of \$757 thousand for the full write-down of the goodwill recorded in connection with its acquisition of Heuro Canada, Inc. ("Heuro"). The significant decline in the price of the Company's Class A common stock ("common stock") following the Company's registered public offering in August 2022 was considered a triggering event for testing whether goodwill was impaired. The Company elected to perform a quantitative impairment test as of September 30, 2022 for its one identified reporting unit, and determined that the carrying value exceeded the estimated fair value based on the closing price of the Company's common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market.

F-11

### [Table of Contents](#)

#### 4. SUPPLEMENTAL BALANCE SHEET DISCLOSURES

Components of selected captions in the Consolidated Balance Sheets are as follows:

##### Accounts receivable, net

Accounts receivable are net of allowance for doubtful accounts of \$0 and less than \$1 thousand and \$355 thousand as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, respectively. During the year ended December 31, 2022, \$334 thousand of past due accounts receivable from a customer that had been fully reserved prior to 2021 were determined by the Company to be uncollectible and were charged off against the allowance for doubtful accounts.

##### Inventory, net (in thousands)

	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	\$	344	\$	171
Raw materials				\$ 351 \$ 344
Work-in-process		284	528	67 284
Finished goods		39	32	96 39
Inventory, gross		667	731	514 667
Inventory reserve		(78)	(255)	(57) (78)
Inventory, net	\$	589	\$ 476	\$ 457 \$ 589

During the years ended December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022, existing reserves of \$16 thousand and \$175 thousand were charged against work-in-process inventory, inventory, respectively.

##### Prepaid expenses and other current assets (in thousands)

	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	\$	817	\$	236
Prepaid expenses				\$ 689 \$ 817
Inventory related		399	626	333 399
Deferred offering costs				140 —
Total prepaid expenses and other current assets	\$	1,216	\$ 862	\$ 1,162 \$ 1,216

##### Property and equipment, net (in thousands)

	December 31,

	2023	2022
Furniture and fixtures	\$ 59	\$ 59
Equipment	243	373
Computer software and hardware	235	229
Property and equipment	537	661
Accumulated depreciation	(359)	(314)
Property and equipment, net	<u><u>\$ 178</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 347</u></u>

F-11

---

[Table of Contents](#)

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Furniture and fixtures	\$ 59	\$ 65
Equipment	373	373
Computer software and hardware	229	212
Property and equipment	661	650
Accumulated depreciation	(314)	(241)
Property and equipment, net	<u><u>\$ 347</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 409</u></u>

**Accrued and other current liabilities (in thousands)**

	December 31,	
	2023	2022
Insurance payable	\$ 446	\$ 592
Employees benefits	509	509
Professional services	52	119
Franchise tax	168	—
Other	85	60
<b>Total accrued and other current liabilities</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 1,260</u></u></b>	<b><u><u>\$ 1,280</u></u></b>

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Insurance payable	\$ 592	\$ —
Employees benefits	509	712
Professional services	119	197
Franchise tax	—	193
Severance	—	258
Other	60	73
<b>Total accrued and other current liabilities</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 1,280</u></u></b>	<b><u><u>\$ 1,433</u></u></b>

F-12

---

[Table of Contents](#)

#### Deferred revenue

##### *Collaborative Arrangement Exclusive Distribution Agreement*

In October 2019, the Company received Pursuant to an up-front payment of CAD\$360 thousand in connection with a Clinical Research and Co-Promotion Exclusive Distribution Agreement with Health Tech Connex Inc. ("HTC") (the "Co-Promotion ("Exclusivity Agreement"). Under the Co-Promotion Agreement, entered into on March 3, 2023, subject to certain terms and conditions, the Company granted to HTC the exclusive right to provide the PoNS Therapy in the Fraser Valley and Vancouver metro regions of British Columbia, where HTC has operated a PoNS authorized clinic since February 2019. This exclusivity right had an initial term of ten years. License revenue was recognized ratably over the ten-year term through the first three months of 2022, at which time the Company and HTC commenced negotiations to enter into a new exclusive distribution agreement.

On March 3, 2023, the Company entered into an Exclusive Distribution Agreement ("Exclusivity Agreement") with HTC, whereby, subject to certain terms and conditions, the Company granted to HTC the exclusive right to provide the PoNS Therapy® in the Fraser Valley and Vancouver metro regions of British Columbia. HTC is to purchase the PoNS devices for use in these regions exclusively from the Company and on terms no less favorable than the then-current standard terms and conditions. This exclusivity Exclusivity Agreement replaced the previous Clinical Research and Co-Promotion Agreement ("Co-Promotion Agreement") between the parties entered into in October 2019 that included a similar exclusive right provision. The exclusive right under the Exclusivity Agreement was granted for a value of CAD\$273 thousand, which is represented by the unamortized up-front payment that we received from HTC under the former Co-Promotion Agreement and has an Agreement. The initial term of five years, the Exclusivity Agreement expires on December 31, 2027, and is renewable by HTC for one additional five-year term upon sixty days' written notice to us, the Company.

Deferred revenue as of both December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 included approximately \$200 thousand 2022 is comprised of license fees not yet recognized the remaining unamortized amount under the Co-Promotion Agreement. License fee revenue these agreements. Revenue recognized is included in other revenue in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive loss.

##### *Noncash Consideration in Acquisition*

Deferred revenue for the remaining noncash consideration to be transferred in connection with the Company's acquisition of Heuro Canada, Inc. ("Heuro") in October 2019 was approximately \$100 thousand as of December 31, 2021. During the year ended December 31, 2022, the remaining 16 PoNS devices were transferred and the remaining \$100 thousand of deferred revenue was recognized in Product Sales in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss. During the year ended December 31, 2021, there were 18 PoNS devices transferred which resulted in the recognition of \$100 thousand of deferred revenue in Product Sales in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

#### 5. LEASES

The Company has two an operating leases lease for office space with lease terms that commenced in January 2022 and February 2022 and will expire in March 2025 and January 2024, respectively. 2025. The leases do lease does not contain any options to extend. Operating lease costs for the current and prior leases for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 were \$56 \$54 thousand and \$63 \$56 thousand, respectively.

Maturities of operating lease liabilities at December 31, 2022 as of December 31, 2023 were as follows (in thousands):

2023	\$	57
2024		46 \$46
2025		12 12
Total lease payments		115 58
Less: imputed interest		(5) (1)
Total lease liabilities	\$	110 \$57

The following table provides information on the lease terms and discount rates for the **two** operating **leases** as of **December 31, 2022** December 31, 2023:

Weighted average remaining lease term (in years)	2.13
Weighted average discount rate	4.5455 %

F-12

[Table of Contents](#)

## 6. INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Intangible assets consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,						December 31,							
	2022			2021			2023			2022				
	Net		Carrying	Net		Carrying	Net		Carrying	Net		Carrying		
	Useful Life (in years)	Cost	Accumulated Amortization	Value	Cost	Accumulated Amortization	Value	Useful Life (in years)	Cost	Accumulated Amortization	Value	Cost		
Reacquired rights								3.87	\$486	\$ (486)	\$ —	\$475	\$ (388)	\$ 87
Acquired proprietary software	5.00	\$142	\$ (90)	\$ 52	\$151	\$ (66)	\$ 85	5.00	145	(121)	24	142	(90)	52
Reacquired rights	3.87	475	(388)	87	505	(283)	222							
Internally developed software	3.00	84	(83)	1	84	(58)	26	3.00	84	(84)	—	84	(83)	1
Total intangible assets		\$701	\$ (561)	\$ 140	\$740	\$ (407)	\$ 333		\$715	\$ (691)	\$ 24	\$701	\$ (561)	\$ 140

The acquired proprietary software and reacquired rights intangible assets were recorded in connection with the Company's acquisition of Heuro.

Estimated amortization expense for each of the years year ending December 31 December 31, 2024 is as follows (in thousands):

2023	\$ 116
2024	24
	\$ 140

\$24 thousand.

## 7. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS

Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants. Fair value of an asset or liability considers assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability, including consideration of non-performance risk. The inputs used to determine fair values are categorized in one of the following three levels of the fair value hierarchy:

Level 1 – Quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2 – Inputs, other than quoted prices in active markets, that are observable, either directly or indirectly.

Level 3 – Unobservable inputs that are not corroborated by market data.

The Consolidated Financial Statements include financial instruments for which the fair market value of such instruments may differ from amounts reflected on a historical cost basis. Financial instruments of the Company as of December 31, 2023 and 2022 consist of cash equivalents, which were comprised of deposits of excess cash in an unrestricted money market savings account, money market mutual funds, treasury bills and a certificate of deposit as of December 31, 2022. The Company did not have any cash equivalents as of December 31, 2021. deposit. The carrying value of cash equivalents generally approximates fair value due to their short-term nature.

The Company's derivative liability as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2022 is comprised of warrants issued in connection with the registered public offering completed in August 2022 discussed in Note 8. The derivative liability is classified as Level 3 within the fair value hierarchy and is required to be recorded at fair value on a recurring basis. See Note 8 for further information on the fair value of the derivative liability.

F-14

---

[Table The majority of Contents](#)the Company's non-financial instruments, which include intangible assets, lease assets, inventories and property and equipment, are not required to be carried at fair value on a recurring basis. However, if certain triggering events occur (or at least annually for indefinite-lived intangible assets), a non-financial instrument is required to be evaluated for impairment. If the Company determines that the non-financial instrument is impaired, the Company would be required to write down the non-financial instrument to its fair value. See Note 3 – Goodwill and Fixed Asset Impairment for further detail.

## 8. COMMON STOCK AND WARRANTS

The Company may issue common stock in connection with underwritten public offerings, registered direct public offerings or other financing transactions. Such issuances of common stock may include the issuance or sale of warrants to purchase common stock.

F-13

---

[Table of Contents](#)

### Equity Transactions

#### At-The-Market Offering

On June 23, 2023, the Company entered into a Sales Agreement (the "Sales Agreement") with Roth Capital Partners, LLC ("Roth") to create an at-the-market offering program ("ATM") under which the Company may offer and sell shares having an aggregate offering price of up to \$2.0 million. Roth is entitled to a commission at a fixed commission rate equal to up to 3% of the gross proceeds pursuant to the Sales Agreement. As of December 31, 2023, 53,010 share issuances of securities have occurred in connection with the ATM generating net proceeds of \$0.4

million inclusive of \$0.1 million of share issuance costs. On February 8, 2024, 148,201 shares were issued with the ATM, generating net proceeds of \$1.3 million.

#### **Series B Preferred Stock**

On March 23, 2023, the Board of Directors declared a dividend of one one-thousandth of a share of Series B Preferred Stock ("Series B Preferred Stock") for each outstanding share of Common Stock held of record on April 3, 2023, and the Certificate of Designation was filed with the Delaware Secretary of State and became effective on March 24, 2023. The value of the Series B Preferred Stock issued in connection with the stock dividend was immaterial.

The Series B Preferred Stock is not transferrable by the holder except in connection with a transfer by such holder of any shares of common stock held by such holder. The Series B Preferred Stock is not convertible into, or exchangeable for, shares of any other class or series of stock or other securities of the Company. The Series B Preferred Stock has no stated maturity and is not subject to any sinking fund. The Series B Preferred Stock is not subject to any restriction on the redemption or repurchase of shares by the Company while there is any arrearage in the payment of dividends or sinking fund installments. The holder of Series B Preferred Stock is not entitled to receive dividends.

Each share of Series B Preferred Stock entitled the holder to 1,000,000 votes per share and each fraction of a share of Series B Preferred Stock had a ratable number of votes. The outstanding shares of Series B Preferred Stock voted together with the outstanding shares of the Company's common stock, as a single class, exclusively with respect to the proposal giving the Board of Directors the authority, as it would determine appropriate, to implement a reverse stock split within twelve months following the approval of such proposal by the Company's stockholders (the "Reverse Stock Split Proposal"), as well as any proposal to adjourn any meeting of stockholders called for the purpose of voting on the foregoing matters (the "Adjournment Proposal").

At the annual meeting of stockholders of the Company held on May 24, 2023, the Company's stockholders approved an amendment to the Company's Certificate of Incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of its outstanding common stock. All shares of Series B Preferred Stock that did not vote in person or by proxy were redeemed in whole by the Company. Shares of Series B Preferred Stock that did vote in person or by proxy will need to request redemption from the Company at a rate of \$0.001 per share in cash. As of December 31, 2023, no shareholders of Series B Preferred Stock have requested such redemption.

#### **Reverse Stock Split**

At the annual meeting of stockholders on May 24, 2023, our stockholders voted to approve a reverse stock split of our outstanding Class A common stock at a ratio in the range of 1-for-10 to 1-for-80 to be determined at the discretion of the Board of Directors. On August 11, 2023, the Board approved a 1-for-50 reverse stock split of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Stock (the "Reverse Stock Split") that became effective 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time on August 16, 2023.

All issued and outstanding Common Stock and per share amounts contained in the financial statements have been retroactively adjusted to reflect this Reverse Stock Split for all periods presented. In addition, a proportionate adjustment was made to the per share exercise price and the number of shares issuable upon the exercise of all outstanding stock options, restricted stock units and warrants to purchase shares of Common Stock. Per the warrant agreement for the Public Warrants, the exercise price for these warrants was reset to the volume-weighted average price for the five days following the Reverse Stock Split. A proportionate adjustment was also made to the number of shares reserved for issuance pursuant

F-14

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

to the Company's equity incentive compensation plans to reflect the Reverse Stock Split. Any fraction of a share of Common Stock that was created as a result of the Reverse Stock Split was rounded down to the next whole share and stockholders received cash settlement equal to the market value of the fractional share, determined by multiplying such fraction by the closing sales price of the Company's Common Stock as reported on Nasdaq on the last trading day before the Reverse Stock Split effective date. The authorized shares and par value of the Common Stock and preferred stock were not adjusted as a result of the Reverse Stock Split.

#### August 2022 Issuance of Common Stock and Warrants

On August 9, 2022, the Company closed on a registered public offering consisting of 18,560,000 shares of common stock, pre-funded warrants to purchase 5,440,000 shares of common stock and accompanying warrants to purchase an aggregate of 36,000,000 shares of common stock ("Public Warrants") at a combined offering price of \$0.75 per share and accompanying Public Warrants, or \$0.749 per pre-funded warrant and accompanying Public Warrants ("August 2022 Public Offering"). The pre-funded warrants had an exercise price of \$0.001 per share and were all exercised on the closing date. As a result, issued an aggregate of 24,000,000 shares were issued on the closing date of common stock for gross proceeds of \$18 million. In connection with the August 2022 Public Offering, the Company paid \$1.7 million of share issuance costs, which consisted of placement agent fees and expenses and other offering costs.

In connection with the August 2022 Public Offering, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 720,000 shares of common stock ("Public Warrants"). The Company performed an analysis of the provisions of the Public Warrants and concluded that the Public Warrants did not meet the guidance for being classified as an equity instrument due to a potential price reset prompted by a change in an unrelated instrument's conversion rate or, in the event of a fundamental transaction, settlement rights that differ from those of the underlying common stockholders. As a result of the derivative liability classification of the Public Warrants, the gross proceeds were first allocated to the fair value of the Public Warrants as of August 9, 2022 of \$9.9 million and the remaining \$8.1 million in gross proceeds were allocated to stockholders' equity. The share issuance costs associated with the August 2022 Public Offering were allocated between the issuance of common stock and Public Warrants on a pro rata basis with the allocation of the gross proceeds, which resulted in \$0.8 million of share issuance costs being recorded as a reduction of additional paid-in capital and \$0.9 million of share issuance costs being recorded in interest expense on the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

The fair value of the derivative liability as of the issuance date on August 9, December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022 was \$9.9 million \$3.3 million and \$6.9 million, respectively. The change in the fair value of the derivative liability was recognized as a component of nonoperating income (expense) in the Company's Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

The fair value of the Public Warrants as of December 31, 2022 was determined using both a Monte Carlo simulation model, which uses multiple input variables to determine the probability of the occurrence of a price reset or a fundamental transaction and the Black-Scholes option pricing model. The following table includes the stock price and the inputs used to estimate the fair value of the Public Warrants as of the issuance date of August 9, 2022 was calculated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model, as the occurrence of a price reset with regard to the exercise price or pricing disruption with regard to a fundamental transaction were not deemed to be the operative factors contemplated upon issuance of the Public Warrants. warrants:

	December 31,		August 9,		December 31,	
	2022	2022	2022	2023	2022	
Stock price	\$ 0.31	\$ 0.49		\$ 8.04	\$ 15.35	
Exercise price	\$ 0.75	\$ 0.75				
Warrant term (in years)		4.61	5.00	3.61	4.61	
Expected volatility		80.90 %	78.27 %	84.10 %	80.90 %	
Risk-free interest rate		4.04 %	2.97 %	3.96 %	4.04 %	
Dividend rate		0.00 %	0.00 %	0.00 %	0.00 %	

#### Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement

During the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company issued 391,363 shares and 40,000 shares, respectively, at an average price per share of \$1.65 and \$14.42, respectively, \$82.32 to Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC

("Lincoln Park") pursuant to a purchase agreement (the "LPC Purchase Agreement") and registration rights agreement with Lincoln Park entered into on September 1, 2021. In addition, in connection with the execution of the LPC Purchase Agreement, the Company issued 31,958 shares of common stock to Lincoln Park as consideration for Lincoln Park's commitment to purchase shares of the Company's common stock. The \$0.5 million fair value of the common stock was recorded as share issuance costs.

Lincoln Park has no right to require the Company to sell any shares of common stock to Lincoln Park, but Lincoln Park is obligated to make purchases as the Company directs, subject to the provisions of the LPC Purchase Agreement and applicable rules of the Nasdaq Capital Market. The Company does not intend to issue any additional shares under the LPC Purchase Agreement.

F-15

---

#### [November 2021 Issuance Table of Common Stock Contents](#)

On November 12, 2021, in an underwritten public offering (the "November 2021 Offering"), the Company issued 1,385,031 shares of common stock at a purchase price of \$8.00 per share. Net proceeds from the November 2021 Offering after underwriter's discounts and commission and offering expenses were approximately \$9.9 million. Affiliates of an officer and director participated in the November 2021 Offering on the same terms and conditions as all other purchasers.

#### **February 2021 Issuance of Common Stock and Warrants**

On February 1, 2021, in an underwritten public offering (the "February 2021 Offering"), the Company issued 744,936 shares of common stock and warrants to purchase up to an aggregate of 372,468 shares of common stock at a purchase price of \$14.82 per unit, consisting of one share and a warrant to purchase 0.50 shares of common stock. The warrants have an initial exercise price of \$16.302 per share and are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance. The Company also issued warrants to the underwriter to purchase 29,797 shares of common stock, with an exercise price of \$18.525 per share. Net proceeds from the February 2021 Offering after underwriter's discounts and commission and offering expenses were approximately \$9.6 million. Affiliates of an officer and director participated in the February 2021 Offering on the same terms and conditions as all other purchasers.

The Company has determined that warrants issued in connection with the February 2021 Offering should be classified as equity as partial cash settlement under certain circumstances, charges of transfer taxes and fees and provisions related to market volatility did not preclude equity classification. The relative fair value of these warrants at issuance was approximately \$2.6 million and was included in additional paid-in capital.

The fair value of the warrants as of the issuance date of February 1, 2021 was calculated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. The following table summarizes the weighted average assumptions used in estimating the fair value of the warrants:

	February 1, 2021
Stock price	\$ 14.82
Exercise price	\$ 16.47
Warrant term (in years)	5.00
Expected volatility	75.02 %
Risk-free interest rate	0.42 %
Dividend rate	0.00 %

#### **Warrants**

The 627,090 of outstanding liability classified Public Warrants have an exercise price of \$0.75 that was reset to \$6.9135 per share as a result of the Company's Reverse Stock Split on August 16, 2023 are exercisable upon issuance and will expire five years following the date of issuance. No 92,910 Public Warrants were exercised and the Company exercised received gross proceeds of \$0.6 million. No warrants were cancelled during the period from the date of issuance through December 31, 2022 year ended December 31, 2023.

F-16

---

The Company has outstanding equity-classified warrants to purchase 593,924 9,960 shares of common stock at a weighted average exercise price of \$16.32, \$819.77, with expiration dates ranging from March 2025 to February 2026. During the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, no warrants were exercised or cancelled, and 1,884 warrants were cancelled due to expiration.

## 9. STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION

The Company may issue stock-based compensation awards under The Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2022 Equity Incentive Plan ("2022 Plan") or the Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2021 Inducement Plan (as amended, the "Inducement Plan"). The 2022 Plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options ("ISOs"), nonstatutory stock options ("NSOs"), stock appreciation rights, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit awards, performance awards and other forms of awards to employees, directors and consultants. The maximum number of shares of common stock that may be issued on the exercise of ISOs under the 2022 Plan is 11,212,720. Options to purchase shares of the Company's common stock granted under the 2022 Plan are awarded at a price equal to the fair market value at the date of grant based upon the closing price on that date. Options granted under the 2022 Plan generally vest over periods of between one to three years and expire no later than ten years from the date of grant. Effective with the stockholder approval of the 2022 Plan on May 23, 2022, the Company ceased granting awards under the 2018 Omnibus Incentive Plan (as amended, the "2018 Plan"). However, outstanding stock options granted prior to the effective date of the 2022 Plan are still governed by the 2018 Plan or the respective predecessor incentive plan under which they were granted.

The 2022 Plan contains an automatic increase provision which provides for an annual increase to the maximum number of authorized shares on January 1 of each year beginning on January 1, 2023 through January 1, 2027, to an amount equal to (i) 20% of the fully diluted number of shares of common stock outstanding on December 31 of the fiscal year before the date of each automatic increase, or (ii) a lesser number of shares determined by the board of directors prior to the date of the increase. As of January 1, 2023 January 1, 2024, the number of shares authorized for issuance increased from the initial 1,121,272 264,319 to 13,215,973 319,941 and there were 12,129,388 74,643 shares of common stock available for issuance under the 2022 Plan.

The Company also maintains the Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. 2021 Inducement Plan (as amended, the "Inducement Plan") which permits the grant of non-statutory stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock, restricted stock units, performance stock and cash awards and other share-based awards. The Inducement Plan is used exclusively for grants of awards to individuals who were not previously employees or directors of the Company. Options granted under the Inducement Plan generally vest over four years and expire after ten years. The exercise price of each option is equal to the fair market value of the common stock at the date of grant.

The Inducement Plan was approved by the Company's board of directors without stockholder approval on July 2, 2022 pursuant to Rule 5635(c)(4) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules. On December 15, 2022, the Company's board of directors approved an amendment to the Inducement Plan to increase the number of shares authorized for issuance from the initial 100,000 to 600,000. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 472,500 9,240 shares of common stock available for issuance under the Inducement Plan.

The fair value of each stock option award is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option valuation model that uses the assumptions noted in the following tables. The risk-free interest rate is estimated using the United States Treasury yield curve and is based on the expected term of the award. Due to the Company's short trading history and higher volatility relative to its peers, expected volatility is based on an average of a peer group of companies with trading histories of at least ten years. The expected term of stock option awards granted is estimated based on the "simplified" method described in the SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin, Topic 14: Share-Based Payment. Expected volatility is calculated using historical volatility over the expected term.

The Black-Scholes option pricing model was used with the following weighted-average assumptions for options granted during the periods indicated: years ended December 31, 2023 and 2022:

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Risk-free interest rate	2.95 %	1.18 %	3.93 %	2.95 %
Expected volatility	74.91 %	78.03	79.43 %	74.91
Expected term (years)	5.70	6.99	5.70	5.70
Expected dividend yield	0.00 %	0.00 %	0.00 %	0.00 %
Fair value, per share	\$ 1.02	\$ 10.53	\$ 10.17	\$ 50.93

The fair value of restricted stock units granted during the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was based on the closing price of the Company's common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market on the day of the grant.

Stock option activity during the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 was as follows:

	Weighted Average				Weighted Average			
	Weighted		Remaining	Intrinsic	Weighted		Remaining	Intrinsic
	Shares	Exercise Price	Contractual	Value	Shares	Exercise Price	Contractual	Value
<b>Outstanding as of December 31, 2021</b>	669,117	\$ 37.36	9.03					
<b>Outstanding as of December 31, 2022</b>					23,800	\$ 670.36	8.56	—
Granted	645,170	2.81			223,268	14.63	—	—
Exercised	—	—			—	—	—	—
Forfeited	(124,398)	87.48			(1,238)	377.94	—	—
<b>Outstanding as of December 31, 2022</b>	<b>1,189,889</b>	<b>13.39</b>	<b>8.89</b>	<b>\$ 5</b>				
<b>Exercisable as of December 31, 2022</b>	<b>598,841</b>	<b>20.58</b>	<b>8.56</b>	<b>\$ —</b>				
<b>Outstanding as of December 31, 2023</b>					245,830	76.28	9.03	\$ 5.00
<b>Exercisable as of December 31, 2023</b>					98,350	149.43	8.93	\$ 4.00

The following table summarizes nonvested restricted stock unit activity during the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023:

	Weighted Average		Weighted Average	
	Grant Date		Grant Date	
	Shares	Fair Value	Shares	Fair Value
<b>Nonvested as of December 31, 2021</b>	2,359	\$ 15.76		
<b>Nonvested as of December 31, 2022</b>			160	\$ 70.00
Granted	24,196	1.40	6,644	7.81
Vested	(18,491)	3.23	(4,576)	9.98
Forfeited	—	—	—	—
<b>Nonvested as of December 31, 2022</b>	<b>8,064</b>	<b>1.40</b>		
<b>Nonvested as of December 31, 2023</b>			2,228	\$ 7.81

Total stock-based compensation expense was as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	\$ 15	\$ 7	\$ 18	\$ 15
Cost of sales				
Selling, general and administrative	2,015	3,552	1,320	2,015
Research and development	224	693	291	224
Total stock-based compensation expense	\$ 2,254	\$ 4,252	\$ 1,629	\$ 2,254

Stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2022 included \$1.2 million of expense associated with the vesting of performance-based stock options upon the achievement of the performance criteria when the public offering in August 2022 was completed. Stock-based compensation expense for the year ended December 31, 2021 included \$0.5 million of expense related to the accelerated vesting of stock options in connection with the departure of the Company's former chief operating officer in July 2021.

F-18 F-17

---

#### [Table of Contents](#)

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the total remaining unrecognized compensation expense related to nonvested stock options and restricted stock units was \$1.9 million \$2.5 million which will be amortized over weighted-average remaining requisite service period of 2.4 1.0 years.

#### 10. BASIC AND DILUTED LOSS PER SHARE

The table below presents the computation of basic and diluted loss per share (in thousands, except share and per share information):

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022		2021	
	\$ (14,072)	\$ (18,132)	2,456,782	13,497,159
<b>Basic:</b>				
Net loss available to common stockholders - basic	\$ (14,072)	\$ (18,132)		
Weighted average common shares outstanding - basic	13,497,159	2,456,782		
Net loss available to common stockholders — basic			\$ (8,850)	\$ (14,072)
Weighted average common shares outstanding — basic			607,890	269,929
Loss per share - basic	\$ (1.04)	\$ (7.38)	\$ (14.56)	\$ (52.13)
<b>Diluted:</b>				
Net loss available to common stockholders - diluted <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ (14,072)	\$ (18,132)		
Weighted average common shares outstanding - diluted <sup>(1)</sup>	13,497,159	2,456,782		
Loss per share - diluted	\$ (1.04)	\$ (7.38)	\$ (14.56)	\$ (52.13)
Net loss available to common stockholders — diluted <sup>(1)</sup>			\$ (8,850)	\$ (14,072)
Weighted average common shares outstanding — diluted <sup>(1)</sup>			607,890	269,929
Loss per share — diluted			\$ (14.56)	\$ (52.13)

(1) For the year years ended December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022, no adjustment was made to the numerator and no incremental shares were added to the denominator for the Public Warrants being accounted for as a derivative liability, as the Public Warrants were out-of-the-money. Refer to Note 8 for additional information about the Public Warrants.

The following outstanding securities, presented based on amounts outstanding as of the end of each period, were not included in the computation of diluted loss per share for the periods indicated, as they would have been anti-dilutive due to the net loss in each period.

	Years Ended		Years Ended	
	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
	1,189,889	669,117	245,830	23,800
Stock options	8,064	2,359	2,228	160
Restricted stock units	36,593,924	593,924	637,059	731,853
Warrants				

## 11. INCOME TAXES

The Company's loss before provision for income taxes was generated from operations in the United States and outside of the United States as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022		2023	
	\$ 12,417	\$ 16,589	\$ 8,689	\$ 12,417
U.S.	1,655	1,543	161	1,655
Non-U.S.	\$ 14,072	\$ 18,132	\$ 8,850	\$ 14,072

F-19 F-18

## [Table of Contents](#)

A reconciliation of the United States federal statutory income tax rate to the Company's effective income tax rate is as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,		Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Income tax benefit at United States federal statutory rate	\$ (2,955)	\$ (3,808)	\$ (1,858)	\$ (2,955)
Derivative liability	(636)	—	(623)	(636)
Share based payments	500	810	(791)	500
Goodwill impairment	198	—	—	198
Tax credits	(157)	(103)	(142)	(157)
Foreign income taxed at foreign rate	(91)	(85)	(9)	(91)
Other permanent difference	59	4	126	59
Other	164	(4)	144	164
Increase in valuation allowance	2,918	3,186	3,153	2,918
Income tax expense	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

The components of deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows (in thousands):

	As of December 31,		As of December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
<b>Deferred tax assets</b>				
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 29,130	\$ 27,514	\$ 30,642	\$ 29,130

Stock-based compensation	1,696	1,715	3,316	1,696
Research and development	1,642	930	2,164	1,642
Tax credit carryforwards	1,114	987	1,267	1,114
Compensation and benefits	108	177	120	108
Unrealized foreign currency losses	102	—	33	102
Deferred revenue	53	90	45	53
Lease liability	25	1	13	25
Inventory reserve	18	58	13	18
<b>Total deferred tax assets</b>	<b>33,888</b>	<b>31,472</b>	<b>37,613</b>	<b>33,888</b>
<b>Deferred tax liabilities</b>				
Property and equipment	(57)	(68)	(16)	(57)
Intangible assets	(37)	(83)	(7)	(37)
Right-of-use asset	(23)	(1)	(12)	(23)
Unrealized foreign currency gains	—	(98)	—	—
<b>Total deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>(117)</b>	<b>(250)</b>	<b>(35)</b>	<b>(117)</b>
<b>Valuation allowance</b>	<b>(33,771)</b>	<b>(31,222)</b>	<b>(37,578)</b>	<b>(33,771)</b>
<b>Net deferred tax assets</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ —</b>

Net operating loss carryforwards and the related carryforward expiration periods as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 are summarized as follows (in thousands):

	Carryforward		Carryforward	
	Amount	Expiration	Amount	Expiration
United States federal net operating losses	\$ 39,500	2033-2037	\$ 39,561	2032-2037
United States federal net operating losses	68,000	Indefinite	74,943	Indefinite
United States state net operating losses	68,500	2034-2042	71,165	2034-2043
United States state net operating losses	500	Indefinite	3,213	Indefinite
Canada federal net operating losses	6,500	2034-2042	6,532	2034-2043

F-20 F-19

#### [Table of Contents](#)

The gross tax credit carryforwards and the related carryforward expiration periods as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 are summarized as follows (in thousands):

	Carryforward		Carryforward	
	Amount	Expiration	Amount	Expiration
United States federal research expenditure tax credits	\$ 655	2035-2042	\$ 797	2034-2043
Canada federal research expenditure tax credits	459	2034-2037	470	2034-2037

Under the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), the net operating loss carryforwards are subject to review and possible adjustment by the Internal Revenue Service and state tax authorities. Net operating loss carryforwards may become subject to an annual limitation in the event of certain cumulative changes in the ownership interest of significant shareholders over a three-year period in excess of 50 percent, as defined under Section 382 of the Code, as well as similar state provisions. This could substantially limit the

amount of tax attributes that can be utilized annually to offset future taxable income or tax liabilities. The amount of the annual limitation is determined based on the value of the Company immediately prior to the ownership change. Subsequent ownership changes may further affect the limitation in future years. Although a formal Section 382 analysis has not yet been completed, the Company believes it is possible ownership changes have occurred. The annual limitation may result in the expiration of United States net operating losses and credits before utilization; however, due to the valuation allowance against deferred tax assets as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the net effect of any limitation will have no impact on results of operations.

The accounting guidance related to uncertain tax positions prescribes a recognition threshold and measurement attribute for recognition and measurement of a tax position taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. It also provides guidance on de-recognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure and transition. As of both December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, the Company does not have an accrual relating to uncertain tax positions. It is not anticipated that unrecognized tax benefits would significantly increase or decrease within 12 months of the reporting date.

The Company files income tax returns in the United States and Canada. The Company's tax returns are subject to tax examinations by United States federal and state tax authorities, or examinations by foreign tax authorities until the expiration of the respective statutes of limitation. The Company currently has no tax years under examination.

## 12. DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLAN

The Company's employees in the United States are eligible to participate in the Helius Medical Inc. Savings Plan, as amended, a safe harbor 401(k) plan ("401(k) Plan"). The 401(k) Plan allows eligible employees to make contributions through payroll deductions up to IRS limits. Effective January 1, 2022, the Company matches the first 3% of the participant's annual eligible compensation contributed to the plan on a dollar-for-dollar basis. The Company basis and matches the next 2% of the participant's annual eligible compensation to the plan on a 50% basis. Pursuant to the 401(k) safe harbor provisions, the Company's matching contributions are 100% vested. For the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, the Company's defined contribution plan expense was \$148 thousand and \$143 thousand, respectively.

## 13. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

The Company is obligated under a license agreement with Advanced NeuroRehabilitation, LLC ("ANR") to pay a 4% royalty on net revenue collected from the sale of devices covered by ANR's patent pending technology, claims and knowhow. For the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, the Company recorded royalty expense from the sale of devices of approximately \$31 \$24 thousand and \$20 \$31 thousand, respectively, in Royalty Expenses in the its Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

F-21 F-20

---

## Table of Contents

## 14. ENTERPRISE-WIDE DISCLOSURES

The following table presents the Company's revenue disaggregated by geographic area (in thousands):

	Years Ended				Years Ended	
	Years Ended					
	2022	2021	2023	2022		
<b>Product sales, net:</b>						
United States	\$ 318	\$ —	\$ 324	\$ 318		
Canada	460	493	281	460		
Total product sales, net	778	493	605	778		
Other revenue	9	29	39	9		
<b>Total revenue</b>	<b>\$ 787</b>	<b>\$ 522</b>	<b>\$ 644</b>	<b>\$ 787</b>		

A single customer Two customers accounted for 35% and 32% 65% of net product sales for the years year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, respectively, a single customer accounted for 35% of net product sales for the year ended December 31, 2022. A single customer accounted for 83% and 89% and 3% of accounts receivable, net as of December 31, 2022 for the years ended December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, respectively. One other customer accounted for 0% and 40% of accounts receivable, net as of December 31, 2022 and 2021.

F-22 F-21

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Dated: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

By: /s/ Dane C. Andreeff

Dane C. Andreeff

President and Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

By /s/ Dane C. Andreeff

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

Dane C. Andreeff

President, Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer) and  
Director

By /s/ Jeffrey S. Mathiesen

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

Jeffrey S. Mathiesen

Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal  
Accounting Officer), Treasurer, Secretary and Director

By /s/ Paul Buckman

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

Paul Buckman

Director

By /s/ Blane Walter

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

Blane Walter

Director

By /s/ Sherrie Perkins

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

---

Sherrie Perkins  
Director

By /s/ Edward M. Straw  
Edward M. Straw  
Director

Date: **March 9, 2023** **March 28, 2024**

---

**Exhibit 21.1**

**SUBSIDIARIES OF HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC**

<b>ENTITY NAME</b>	<b>JURISDICTION</b>
Helius Medical, Inc.	Delaware
Helius Medical Technologies (Canada), Inc.	Canada
Helius NeuroRehab, Inc.	Delaware
Helius Canada Acquisition Ltd.	Canada
Heuro Canada, Inc.	Canada

---

**Exhibit 23.1**

**CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statements on Form S-1 (No. 333-248824, 333-250974, 333-259334 and 333-266107), Form S-3 (333-270433) and Form S-8 (No. 333-204155, 333-218095, 333-229724, 333-256680, 333-257749, 333-265324 and 333-269305) of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. of our report dated **March 9, 2023** **March 29, 2024**, relating to the consolidated financial statements, which includes an explanatory paragraph relating to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern and appearing within this annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**.

/s/ BAKER TILLY US, LLP

Minneapolis, Minnesota

March 9, 2023

---

**Exhibit 23.2**

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

**Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.**  
**Newtown, Pennsylvania**

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in the Registration Statements on Form S-1 (No. 333-248824, 333-250974, 333-259334 and 333-266107) and Form S-8 (No. 333-204155, 333-218095, 333-229724, 333-256680, 333-257749, 333-265324 and 333-269305) of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc., of our report dated March 14, 2022, relating to the consolidated financial statements of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc., which appears in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Our report contains an explanatory paragraph regarding the Company's ability to continue as a going concern.

/s/ BDO USA, LLP

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

March 9, 2023 28, 2024

---

**Exhibit 31.1**

**Certification of Chief Executive Officer  
of Periodic Report Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a)**

I, Dane C. Andreeff, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 9, 2023 March 28, 2024

/s/ Dane C. Andreeff

Dane C. Andreeff

President and Chief Executive Officer

(Principal Executive Officer)

---

**Exhibit 31.2**

**Certification of Chief Financial Officer  
of Periodic Report Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a)**

I, Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: **March 9, 2023** March 28, 2024

/s/ Jeffrey S. Mathiesen

Jeffrey S. Mathiesen

Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)

---

Exhibit 32.1

**Certification of Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer**  
**Pursuant to**  
**18 U.S.C Section 1350**

In connection with the Annual Report on Form 10-K of Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. (the "Company") for the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023** as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), Dane C. Andreeff, as Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Jeffrey S. Mathiesen, as Chief Financial Officer of the Company, each hereby certifies, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that, to the best of their knowledge:

1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: **March 9, 2023** **March 28, 2024**

/s/ Dane C. Andreeff

Dane C. Andreeff  
President and Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

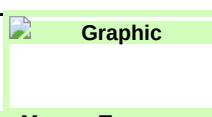
/s/ Jeffrey S. Mathiesen

Jeffrey S. Mathiesen  
Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial officer and Principal Accounting Officer)

A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906, or other document authenticating, acknowledging, or otherwise adopting the signature that appears in typed form within the electronic version of this written statement required by Section 906, has been provided to Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and will be retained by Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.

---

Exhibit 97.1



**HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.**

**POLICY FOR THE RECOVERY OF ERRONEOUSLY AWARDED COMPENSATION**

**Adopted and approved on November 21, 2023 and Effective as of November 21, 2023**

- 1. PURPOSE.** The Board of Directors (the "Board") of HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company") believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to adopt

this Policy for the Recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation, as may be amended from time to time (this “**Policy**”). This Policy requires the recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation by the Company from Covered Executive Officers in accordance with the terms herein. Promptly, but in no event later than 30 days, following the later of the Effective Date or becoming a Covered Executive Officer, each Covered Executive Officer shall sign and return to the Company the Acknowledgement Form attached hereto as Exhibit A pursuant to which such Covered Executive Officer shall agree to be bound by the terms of and comply with this Policy. All capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in Section 3 hereof.

**2. ADMINISTRATION.** This Policy shall be administered by the Compensation Committee of the Board (the “**Compensation Committee**”) or, if so designated by the Board, the Board or another committee thereof (the “**Administrator**”). The Administrator is authorized to interpret and enforce this Policy and to make all determinations necessary, appropriate or advisable for the administration of this Policy. Any determinations made by the Administrator shall be final and binding on all affected persons and need not be uniform with respect to each person covered by this Policy. This Policy is designed to comply with, and shall be interpreted by the Administrator in a manner consistent with, Section 10D (“**Section 10D**”) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the “**Exchange Act**”), Rule 10D-1 promulgated under the Exchange Act (“**Rule 10D-1**”) and Nasdaq Listing Rule 5608 (the “**Listing Standards**”), each as may be amended from time to time. In the administration of this Policy, the Administrator is authorized to consult with the full Board or other committees of the Board, as well as retain any counsel, advisors and consultants.

**3. DEFINITIONS.** For purposes of this Policy, the following capitalized terms shall have the meanings set forth below.

**(a) “Accounting Restatement”** means an accounting restatement of the Company’s financial statements due to the material noncompliance of the Company with any financial reporting requirement under the securities laws, including any required accounting restatement to correct an error in previously issued financial statements (i) that is material to the previously issued financial statements, or (ii) that is not material to the previously issued financial

---

**Exhibit 97.1**

statements but that would have resulted in a material misstatement if the error were corrected in the current period or left uncorrected in the current period.

**(b) “Clawback Eligible Incentive Compensation”** means all Incentive-Based Compensation Received by a Covered Executive Officer (i) on or after October 2, 2023, (ii) if that person served as an executive officer of the Company at any time during the performance period for such Incentive-Based Compensation (whether or not such executive officer is serving as an executive officer or employee of the Company at the time the Erroneously Awarded Compensation is required to be recovered by the Company), and (iii) while the Company had a class of securities listed on a national securities exchange or a national securities association.

**(c) “Clawback Period”** means with respect to any Accounting Restatement, (i) the three completed fiscal years of the Company immediately preceding the Restatement Date and (ii) any transition period that results from a change in the Company’s fiscal year of less than nine months within or immediately following such three completed fiscal years, provided that a transition period that comprises a period of at least nine months shall count as a completed fiscal year.

**(d) “Code”** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations and guidance issued thereunder.

**(e) “Covered Executive Officer”** means the Company’s current and former executive officers, as determined by the Board or an applicable committee in accordance with the definition of “executive officer” set forth

in Rule 10D-1 and the Listing Standards. Unless determined otherwise by the Board or the Administrator, Covered Executive Officers for this Policy shall be any person designated by the Board as an "officer" under Rule 16a-1(f) under the Exchange Act.

(f) **"Effective Date"** means November 21, 2023.

(g) **"Erroneously Awarded Compensation"** means with respect to each Covered Executive Officer and in connection with an Accounting Restatement, the amount of Clawback Eligible Incentive Compensation Received by the Covered Executive Officer during the Clawback Period that exceeds the amount of Clawback Eligible Incentive-Based Compensation that otherwise would have been Received by the Covered Executive Officer during the Clawback Period had it been determined based on the restated amounts, computed without regard to any taxes paid or payable by the Covered Executive Officer.

(h) **"Financial Reporting Measures"** means measures that are determined and presented in accordance with the accounting principles used in preparing the Company's financial statements, and any other measures that are derived wholly or in part from such measures. Financial Reporting Measures include GAAP and non-GAAP financial measures and include but are not limited to the following (and any measures derived wholly or in part therefrom): Company stock price; total shareholder return; revenues; net or operating income; profitability of one or more reportable segments; financial ratios; net assets or net asset value per share; EBITDA; funds from operations; liquidity measures; return measures; earnings measures; sales per square foot or same

---

#### Exhibit 97.1

store sales; revenue per user, or average revenue per user; and any adjusted measure of any of the foregoing measures. For the avoidance of doubt, a Financial Reporting Measure need not be presented in the Company's financial statements or included in a Company filing with the SEC.

(i) **"Group Companies"** means any of the Company's direct and indirect Subsidiaries and affiliates.

(j) **"Incentive-Based Compensation"** means any compensation that is granted, earned or vested based wholly or in part upon the attainment of a Financial Reporting Measure.

(k) **"Nasdaq"** means The Nasdaq Stock Market or any other national securities exchange or association on which the Company's securities are listed as of the applicable date.

(l) **"Received"** means with respect to any Incentive-Based Compensation, actual or deemed receipt. Incentive-Based Compensation shall be deemed to be Received in the Company's fiscal period during which the Financial Reporting Measure specified in the Incentive-Based Compensation award is attained, even if payment or grant of the earned Incentive-Based Compensation occurs after the end of the performance period. For the avoidance of doubt, Incentive-Based Compensation that is subject to both a Financial Reporting Measure vesting condition and a service-based vesting condition shall be considered Received when the relevant Financial Reporting Measure is attained, even if the Incentive-Based Compensation continues to be subject to the service-based vesting condition.

(m) **"Restatement Date"** means the earlier to occur of (i) the date that the Board, a committee thereof or any of the Company's officers authorized to take such action if Board action is not required concluded, or reasonably should have concluded, that the Company is required to prepare an Accounting Restatement; or (ii) the date that a court, regulator or other legally authorized body directs the Company to prepare an Accounting Restatement, in each case regardless of when the restated financial statements are filed.

(n) **"SEC"** means the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

(o) **“Section 409A”** means Section 409A of the Code.

**4. RECOVERY OF ERRONEOUSLY AWARDED COMPENSATION.**

(a) In the event of an Accounting Restatement, the Administrator shall reasonably promptly recover any Erroneously Awarded Compensation and in a manner set forth in this Section 4. In connection therewith, the Administrator shall reasonably promptly (A) determine the amount of any Erroneously Awarded Compensation for each Covered Executive Officer in connection with such Accounting Restatement and (B) thereafter provide each Covered Executive Officer with a written notice containing the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation, the applicable methodology and calculation of such amount, and the method of recovery, as applicable. Prior to sending any such formal demand for recovery as determined pursuant to this Policy, the Administrator may, in its sole discretion depending on the specific facts and circumstances, provide a Covered Executive Officer with an initial written notice containing

---

**Exhibit 97.1**

the foregoing information, and may provide the Covered Executive Officer with the opportunity to be heard at a meeting or otherwise respond in writing to such information.

(i) Recovery under this Policy with respect to a Covered Executive Officer shall not require the finding of any misconduct by such Covered Executive Officer or such Covered Executive Officer being found responsible for the accounting error leading to an Accounting Restatement.

(ii) For Incentive-Based Compensation based on (or derived from) stock price or total shareholder return (or a similar Financial Reporting Measure) where the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation is not subject to mathematical recalculation directly from the information in the applicable Accounting Restatement, the amount shall be determined by the Administrator based on a reasonable estimate of the effect of the Accounting Restatement on the stock price or total shareholder return (or such similar Financial Reporting Measure) upon which the Incentive-Based Compensation was Received; provided that the Company shall maintain documentation of the determination of such reasonable estimate and provide such documentation to Nasdaq.

(iii) Where Incentive-Based Compensation is based only in part on the achievement of a Financial Reporting Measure, the Administrator shall first determine the portion of the original Incentive-Based Compensation that was based on the Financial Reporting Measure that was restated in the Accounting Restatement. The Administrator shall then recalculate the affected portion based on the Financial Reporting Measure as restated, and recover the Erroneously Awarded Compensation.

(iv) To determine Erroneously Awarded Compensation for cash incentive awards determined for a pool of participants, the size of the aggregate pool from which individual awards were paid shall be reduced by applying the Financial Reporting Measure that was restated in the Accounting Restatement, and the individual awards shall be reduced on a pro rata basis (with recovery required from the Covered Executive Officers only).

(v) With respect to any compensation plans or programs that take into account Incentive-Based Compensation, the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation subject to recovery hereunder includes, but is not limited to, the amount contributed to any notional account based on Erroneously Awarded Compensation and any earnings accrued to date on that notional amount.

(b) The Administrator shall have broad discretion to determine the appropriate timing and means of recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation based on the particular facts and circumstances, subject to

applicable law, including but not limited to (i) requiring reimbursement of all or part of any paid cash award, (ii) seeking recovery or forfeiture of any gain realized on the vesting, exercise, settlement, sale, transfer or other disposition of any equity-based awards, (iii) cancelling or reducing any outstanding cash or equity-based awards, whether vested or unvested, (iv) cancelling or offsetting against any planned future cash or equity-based awards, (v) forfeiture of deferred compensation, (vi) offsetting any compensation amount otherwise payable by the Company (or the Group Companies) to the Covered Executive Officer in the future,

---

**Exhibit 97.1**

and (vii) any other method authorized by applicable law or contract as determined by the Administrator. Any method elected by the Administrator shall comply with Section 409A or as required by applicable law. For the avoidance of doubt, except as set forth in Section 4(d) hereof, in no event may the Company accept an amount that is less than the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation in satisfaction of a Covered Executive Officer's obligations hereunder.

**(c)** To the extent that a Covered Executive Officer fails to repay all Erroneously Awarded Compensation to the Company when due (as determined in accordance with Section 4(b) hereof), the Company shall take all reasonable and appropriate actions to recover such Erroneously Awarded Compensation from the applicable Covered Executive Officer. The applicable Covered Executive Officer shall be required to reimburse the Company for any and all expenses reasonably incurred (including legal fees) by the Company in recovering such Erroneously Awarded Compensation in accordance with the immediately preceding sentence.

**(d)** Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Company shall not be required to recover Erroneously Awarded Compensation, including taking the actions contemplated by this Section 4, if the Compensation Committee (or, if the Compensation Committee is not composed solely of independent directors under the Listing Standards, a majority of independent directors serving on the Board) determines that recovery would be impracticable solely for one of the following limited reasons and subject to the procedural and disclosure requirements below and in the applicable rules:

**(i)** The direct expenses paid to a third party to assist in enforcing this Policy against a Covered Executive Officer would exceed the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation, after the Company has made a reasonable attempt to recover the applicable Erroneously Awarded Compensation, documented such attempt and provided such documentation to Nasdaq; or

**(ii)** Recovery would likely cause a tax-qualified retirement plan, under which benefits are broadly available to employees of the Company (or the Group Companies), to fail to meet the requirements of Section 401(a)(13) or Section 411(a) of the Code.

**5. REPORTING AND DISCLOSURE.** The Company shall file all disclosures with respect to this Policy in accordance with federal securities laws, including the disclosure required in any applicable SEC filings.

**6. INDEMNIFICATION AND INSURANCE PROHIBITION.** The Company (or the Group Companies) shall not insure (or reimburse for the purchase of insurance) or indemnify any Covered Executive Officer against (i) the loss of any Erroneously Awarded Compensation that is repaid, returned, recovered, cancelled or forfeited pursuant to the terms of this Policy, or (ii) any claims relating to the Company's enforcement of its rights under this Policy. Further, the Company (or the Group Companies) shall not enter into any agreement that exempts any Incentive-Based Compensation from the application of this Policy or that waives the Company's right to recovery of any Erroneously Awarded Compensation, and this Policy shall supersede any such agreement (whether entered into before, on or after the Effective Date).

**7. EFFECTIVE DATE.** This Policy shall be effective as of the Effective Date. Subject to applicable law, the Administrator may affect recovery under this Policy from any amount of compensation approved, awarded, granted, payable or paid to the Covered Executive prior to, on or after the Effective Date.

**8. AMENDMENT; TERMINATION.** The Board or Administrator may amend this Policy from time to time in its discretion and shall amend this Policy as it deems necessary, including as and when it determines that it is legally required by any federal securities laws or Nasdaq rules or to comply with (or maintain an exemption from the application of) Section 409A. The Board or Administrator may terminate this Policy at any time. Notwithstanding anything in this Section 8 to the contrary, no amendment or termination of this Policy shall be effective if such amendment or termination would (after taking into account any actions taken by the Company contemporaneously with such amendment or termination) cause the Company to violate any federal securities laws, SEC rule or Nasdaq rule.

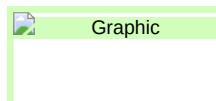
**9. OTHER RECOUPMENT RIGHTS; NO ADDITIONAL PAYMENTS.** Any employment agreement, cash or equity-based award agreement, compensatory plan or any other agreement or arrangement with a Covered Executive Officer shall be deemed to include, as a condition to the grant of any benefit thereunder, an agreement by the Covered Executive Officer to abide by the terms of this Policy. Any right of recoupment under this Policy is in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other remedies or rights of recoupment that may be available to the Company (or the Group Companies), including under applicable law, regulation or rule or pursuant to the terms of any employment or severance agreement, cash or equity-based award agreement, plan or policy, or similar agreement, plan or policy with the Company (or the Group Companies). To the extent that the Covered Executive Officer has already reimbursed the Company (or the Group Companies) for any Erroneously Awarded Compensation Received under any duplicative recovery obligations established by the Company (or the Group Companies) and subject to applicable law, such reimbursed amount shall be credited to the amount of Erroneously Awarded Compensation that is subject to recovery under this Policy.

**10. SEVERABILITY.** The provisions in this Policy are intended to be applied to the fullest extent of the law. To the extent that any provision of this Policy is found to be unenforceable or invalid under any applicable law, such provision shall be applied to the maximum extent permitted, and shall automatically be deemed amended in a manner consistent with its objectives to the extent necessary to conform to any limitations required under applicable law.

**11. SUCCESSORS.** This Policy shall be binding and enforceable against all Covered Executive Officers and their beneficiaries, heirs, executors, administrators or other legal representatives.

\*\*\*

**EXHIBIT A**



**HELIUS MEDICAL TECHNOLOGIES, INC.**

**POLICY FOR THE RECOVERY OF ERRONEOUSLY AWARDED COMPENSATION**

**COVERED EXECUTIVE OFFICER ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FORM**

By signing below, the undersigned acknowledges and confirms that the undersigned has received and reviewed a copy of the Helius Medical Technologies, Inc. Policy for the Recovery of Erroneously Awarded Compensation (as may be amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time, the "Policy"). Capitalized terms used but not otherwise defined in this Acknowledgement Form (the "Acknowledgement Form") shall have the meanings ascribed to such terms in the Policy.

By signing this Acknowledgement Form, the undersigned acknowledges and agrees that the undersigned is and will continue to be subject to the Policy and that the Policy will apply both during and after the undersigned's employment with the Company (or the Group Companies). In the event of any inconsistency between the Policy and the terms of any employment or separation agreement to which I am a party, or the terms of any compensation or severance plan, program or agreement under which any compensation has been granted, awarded, earned or paid, the terms of the Policy shall govern. In the event it is determined by the Administrator that the Erroneously Awarded Compensation must be returned, forfeited or reimbursed to the Company, I will promptly take any action necessary to effectuate such recovery in any manner permitted by the Policy and determined by the Administrator.

\_\_\_\_\_

[Name/Title]

\_\_\_\_\_

[Date]

49444260

---

#### DISCLAIMER

THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THE REFINITIV CORPORATE DISCLOSURES DELTA REPORT™ IS A COMPARISON OF TWO FINANCIALS PERIODIC REPORTS. THERE MAY BE MATERIAL ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR INACCURACIES IN THE REPORT INCLUDING THE TEXT AND THE COMPARISON DATA AND TABLES. IN NO WAY DOES REFINITIV OR THE APPLICABLE COMPANY ASSUME ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY INVESTMENT OR OTHER DECISIONS MADE BASED UPON THE INFORMATION PROVIDED IN THIS REPORT. USERS ARE ADVISED TO REVIEW THE APPLICABLE COMPANY'S ACTUAL SEC FILINGS BEFORE MAKING ANY INVESTMENT OR OTHER DECISIONS.

©2024, Refinitiv. All rights reserved. Patents Pending.